♐ and ♌	♑ and ♄	♒ and ♄	♓ and ♌
Spain	Mecedonia	Amazonia	Cilicia
Dalmatia	Illyria	Sarmatia	Calabria
Sclavonia	Thracia	Tartary the great	Portugal
Hungary	Bosina	Valachia	Galitia
Moravia	Albania	Muscovia	Normandy
Misnia	Bulgaria	Swedland South part.	Phasunia
Celtica	Greece part	Westphalia	Nasomonia in Libia
Thirronia	Masovia	Mosell	Garamantes
Arabia the happy.	Lituania	Piemont	Lydia
Of Cities	Saxony	Bevaria part	Pamphilia
Toledo	Hassia	Æthiopia	Ægypt the higher
Volcteras	Thuringia	Oxiana	Of Cities
Mutina	Marchia	Sogdiana	Alexandria
Narbon	Stiria	Media	Hispalis
Avinion	Orchades	Arabia desert and stony	Compostella
Colonia	India	Of Cities	Parentium
Agrippina	Ariana	Hamborough	Rhems
Studgard	Gedrosia	Breme	Worms
Rotenburg	Of Cities	Mountferate	Ratisbone.
Iudenburg	Oxford.	Pisarum	
Buda	Methlin	Trent	
Gascovia	Fuliacum	Salizburgh	
	Berga	Ingolstadt.	
	Gaunt, some say Vilna		
	Brandenburge		
	Augusta Vindelicorum		
	Constane		
	Derthona		
	Faventia		

The *Reader* is desired to Correct these *Errata's* with his Pen before he Reads the Book.

PAg. 6. line *ult. read*, Here forbear. p. 8. l. 21. r. are partly p 9. l. 5. r. Easterly. p. 18. l. 20 *dele* ♀. p. 19. l. 17. r. *10th. deg.* of ♂. l. 18. r. *20th deg.* ☊. l. 21. r. or casts any *Aspect*, p. 20 l. 1. r. Antiscions, p. 21. l. 10. r. Infortunate, p. 22. l. 12 r. Planets, p. 26. l. 5. r. of ♀, p. 27. l. 28. r. Significatrix p. 28. l. 22. *dele* and, l. 22. r. Lord of the Ascendent, p. 30. *Col.* 3. *against* ♂ r. ☽3, *Coll.* 3. *against* ♎ r. ♄, *Coll.* 8. *against* ♂ r. ♄26, p. 39 l. 12. r. the other, l. 16, for no r. not, p. 42. l. 23. r. oblique, *The Example* pag. 45. *should follow at the end of* pag. 46. p. 49. l. 20, r. 30 *m*, l. 29. r. Collum Intituled, p. 52. l. 6 for 17 day r. 18. and for 18 l. 9. r. 19*th*, p. 53. *the last 4 lines are superfluous*, p. 54. l 7, r. is nothing else, l. 8. *dele* as, p. 55. l. 2. *for* Ascendant r. Ascendent, *and so quite through the Book*, l. 2 r. man, p 57 l. 10. r. yet were they thought, p. 63. l. 6. r. 4 Angles, p 68 l. 9. *for* if r. for, p 70. l. 11. *for* in r. is, p. 78. l. 7. r. judge thus l. 9. *for* Lady r. Lord of the, p. 57. *for* stated r. seated, p. 76 l. 5. r. Necessary, p. 97. l 6. r. or if, p. 98. l. 4. r. a Planet, l. *ult.* r. and. p. 99. l. 21. r. the Ascendent, p. 111. l. 3. *and* 7. r. ♏, p. 125. l. 10. r. Angle in ♍, p. 130. l. 5. *for* she r. he, p. 138. l. 3. r. □ to ♀, p. 144. l. 3. r. *April* 1668.

These are the most Considerable except mispointing, spelling, or Pageing, which will be obvious to every understanding Reader, and easily Corrected.

Genethlialogia

OR,

The Genethliacal Part of

ASTROLOGY.

Exactly Performing, and Briefly Comprehending the whole Doctrine of *Directions* and *Judgement* on *Nativities*.

WHEREIN

Is shewed (by an exact method) the manner of their Rectification several wayes, together, with their precize Calculation onely by Proportions in *Trigonometry*.

ALSO,

How to set a Scheam Artificially the *Rational* way, and what soever is Requisit in directing Significators to their several Promittors; with some varieties therein, not hitherto published.

With Annual Revolutions and the manner of their Directions *&c.* Together how to Judge the General fate of the Native: and Consequently point out the most prosperous or dangerous times, that may probably happen in the whole Course of a Mans *Life*.

By HENRY COLEY *Philomat.*

St. Hierom. *on* Matth. 18. v. 10.

Great is the Dignity *of Souls, that every Man from his first Rising and Appearing under the Stars in his* Nativity, *hath an Angel Delegated to him for his Custody or Safety.*

London, Printed by *J. W.* for *Josuah Coniers* at the *Raven* in *Duck-Lane*. 1668

T. Price 1826



Genethlialogia,
OR,
The Genethliacal Part of
ASTROLOGY.

Proœmium.

THis moſt Excellent and uſeful Part of *Aſtrology*, admits of many varieties, and hath diverſe Intricate turnings therein, therefore ought the more to be facilitated and explained, which is the Chiefeſt end aimed at in the following Diſcourſe for the encouragement of ſuch Ingenious perſons that are lovers of theſe kinde of Curioſities.

The Calculation of Nativities is a ſubject that hath been of good eſteem with many learned perſons, in former Ages: and there are diverſe able men now living, that for the uſefulneſs thereof, and the truth they have found by Experience *therein, have as high*

thoughts of the ſame; Although in ſome Nativities the Accidents and directions have not (perhaps) ſo nearly Agreed and concurred together as was expected. This may be for want of a due Correction, and it is no eaſie matter for an Artiſt to verifie the Aſcendent of a Nativity. For if a Nativity be carefully Rectified, and directed exactly, the Accidents that Occur to the Native, Rarely fail to Correſpond with the Directions, and many times take place ſo punctually, even to Admiration. Of the truth of this, we have had many eminent examples both Ancient and Modern which ſufficiently confirms the truth of this Doctrine.

Note that the uſual Omiſſion of the odd Minutes adhering to the Pole of poſition (notwithſtanding the uncertainty of the Planets places) may inſtead of helping, make the errour the greater. The Tranſits and Revolution ought alſo to be conſidered herein, (as my loving friend Mr. J. G. well notes) which are the Harbingers of a direction, and the Learned Sr. Chriſtopher Heydon affirms, That events proper to men, may be both Anticipated and continued before, or beyond a Direction. Def. Aſtro. p. 412. unto which I may add, that a Rational meaſure of time ought to be choſen, which is of great Concernment in the matter of Directions, of which I ſhall ſpeak farther in its proper place.

The Doctrine of Directions is Copiouſly handled by ſeveral Learned men, eſpecially Foraign Authors, amongſt

amongſt the which the Learned Argolus *is accounted the Beſt, who hath taken great pains to Caleulate Tables (viz.* his Primum Mobile) *which compleatly performs the work. Neither are thoſe of* Regiomontaus *much inferiour to the former, and unto theſe famous Men the World is exceedingly beholding; who before were much at a loſs, and went a tedious obſcure way about to perform this work.*

But in this ſmall Tract I have endeavoured to perform this work with all plainneſs and perſpicuity that may be; (and no leſs exact and eaſie then by the former Authors) onely by the help of thoſe ſmall Tables of Artificial Sines and Tangents *frequently to be had at a ſmall price, to which I muſt refer the Ingenious Artiſt, and* I ſuppoſe there are few lovers of Art, but are already furniſhed with them. *Thoſe Tables being the foundation of all Aſtronomical Tabl s of Directions, and by them alone, are the other Calculated. I ſhall onely give the proportions and operations, and Omit the figures of the Sphear, wherein the ſeveral triangles lye, preſuppoſing the Artiſt already grounded therein.*

If I might adviſe, I would have thoſe that deſire to be curious in this Doctrine, *to* Calculate *the Planets places* (de novo) *from the lateſt and beſt* Aſtronomical Tables, *and ſo lay the foundation of their work as ſure as may be; for I think it not ſafe, to truſt to ſome* Ephemerides *which want of that* Exactneſs *as may be expected, and is required herein.*

This is the Subject that was chiefly intended in this work. I hope my endeavours in this kind may be a motive to ſtir up ſome more able, to publiſh their experience in this Learning for the honour of Art. What I have done I ſhould rather have ſeen performed by ſome other, but herein I hope I ſhall prejudice no Perſon, ſince what is written, was intended for the general good of all, The firſt Rudiments and Principles, to initiate Tyro's, and this Doctrine of Directions by Trigonometry, for thoſe that have made ſome progreſs in things of this Nature, both which I have Contracted into this ſmall volume that it might be a Low prized, portable Companion to the Sons of Art.

Chapter

CHAPTER I.

SECTION I.

What a Nativiiy is.

BY a Nativity we are to underſtand, that very moment of time that the Infant is delivered or ſeparated from the Mothers Womb, and receives the Impreſſion of Ayr upon its tender body, and not that point of time wherein part of the Body appears, (as ſome are pleaſed to Cavil at) but *Cardan* affirms, that to be the moment, in which the Infant draws his firſt breath, or moves the Lungs; in ſhort that very punctilio of time, wherein the Child is ſaid to be compleatly Born into the World, is the moment of the Nativity, in which the Stars are ſaid to have Influence upon the tender Body of the Native, and the poſition of Heaven for that very inſtant is to be conſidered, as the Groundwork and Foundation whereon to Build an *Aſtrological* Judgement of the Future Actions, or Fate of the Native in the World. But ſince the obtaining of this true moment of time is ſo exceeding difficult, by reaſon of the uncertainty of Clocks, Dials or Watches, or any other means, *Aſtrologers* have found out ſeveral wayes for the Rectification thereof, which I come in the next place to ſpeak of.

Section

SECTION. II.

How to Rectifie a Nativity ſeveral wayes.

AMongſt thoſe ſeveral wayes, the *Antients* have given, to Correct a Nativity, and thereby bring the ſuppoſed time to the true time: that of *Accidents*, is accounted the moſt Certain and Infallible, which is thus, *viz.*

1. Having the Eſtimate time given, erect your Scheam, either by a Table of Houſes for the Latitude of Birth or otherwiſe, and let the Planets places be exactly reduced.

2. Draw this Scheam into a Speculum (or Table) according to the uſual form, which is done after this manner, take half, or a quarter of a ſheet of *Paper*, and divide the breadth thereof into 13 Collumes, and the length into 31: In the top of the uppermoſt Collume ſet the 12 Signs in order, *viz.* ♈, ♉, ♊, ♋, &c. And in the firſt left hand Collume, place the degrees of the Signes begining with ♈, 1, 2, 3, &c. to 30.

3. Take the Planets out of your figure and place them in their reſpective Collumes, *viz.* Right againſt the degrees of their places in the firſt Collume, and juſt under the Signes they are in, noted at top. Into this Speculum you are alſe accordingly to inſert the ☊ and ☋ the ☉ the Antiſcions, and Contra-antiſcions of the Planets, as alſo their terms which you may take out of the table of eſſential Dignities and ſome of the moſt eminent Fixed Stars of the firſt magnitude that are near the Ecliptick.

4. Having

4. Having proceeded thus far, note down the severall Aſpects of the Planets, both Dexter, and Sinister: as ſuppoſe ♄ in ♉ his ✶ Sinister falls in the ſame degree of ♋, and his ✶ Dexter in ♓. his □ Sinister in ♌, □ Dexter in ♒, his △ Sinister in ♍, △ Dexter in ♑ and his ☍ in ♏, which you may eaſily do by a ſmall Table of the *Aſpects* of the Planets at the begining of the firſt part of the Book, underſtand the like in all the other *Planets*, *&c.* And, laſtly in the Collaterate Collume of the Signe and Degree of the *Aſcendent* and Mid-heaven: note *Aſc* and *M. C.* and your Speculum is finiſhed, I have been the larger upon this, becauſe I would make it plain to Learners.

5. Collect as many *Accidents* from the Native (as are of note) that can be procured, and the Year, Month (and Day if it be poſſible) they happened, as thus, aged ſo many Years, Months, and Dayes, the Native was Invaded with a ſtrong Feavour, Small Pox, or the like. *Aged* ſo many Years, and Months, to a place of preferment, or Marriage &c. having Collected your accidents that have happened, after this manner, repair to the Speculum, and if you would finde a direction for an *Accident* of the Body, as Sickneſs, *&c.* Begin at the aſcendent, and run down that Collume and ſee if the *Aſcendent* meets with the Body or *Aſpect* of ſome Planet that may denote the accident within ſuch a ſpace of time or not, allowing about a degree of oblique Aſcenſion for a Year, if not remove your *Aſcendent* backward or forward (provided you go not far beyond the eſtimate time) til you make the Degree aſcending correſpond. *After* the ſame manner, for an *Accident* of Preferment or Honour, examine the *M. C* ſee what direction that met withal in ſuch a ſpace of time, this is tried by Right *Aſcenſion*, as the *Aſcendent* by Oblique, *viz.* Subſtract the Oblique aſcenſion of the *Aſcendent*, or R *Aſcenſion* of the *M C.* from the Oblique or Right *Aſcenſion*

of

of the Promittor, and the remainer are the degrees of the Direction, usually called the *Ark* of direction, and by Rectifying either of those *Angles*, the true time of Birth will be exactly found. The same Method you may use in the ☉ or ☽, if the *Accidents* agrees with their directions, but first their circle of position must be known.

SECTION III.

Here follows an Example, How to verifie the Ascendent by an Accident.

LEt the Ascendent be supposed 18 d. 28′ ♈ *in the Latitude* 52 d. *and* ♄ *is in* 2 d. 31′ ♍, *put the case I have an Accident of the nature of the Ascendent to the* □ *of* ♄, *which falls in* 2 d. 31′ ♊, *suppose it some tedious Ague, &c Aged* 36 *Years current (and the estimate time* March 11*th* 6*h.* 30′ A M.*)*

	d.	m.
I finde the Ob. Ascen. of the □ *of* ♄ *in* 2 d. 31′ ♊, *in Lat.* 52 d.	31	29
The Ob. Ascension of the Ascendent 18 d. 28′ ♈ *in that Latitude is*	07	38 Subst.
The Ark of Direct.	23	51

2. *Here the Ark of Direction is but* 23 d. 51′ *which allowing about a* deg. *for a Year is not* 24 *years. and the Accident happened at* 35 *years* 115 *dayes, now suppose a*

Degree

Degree notes a year, 35 years gives 35 d. and to 115 Dayes (acording to that measure) answers 19′ 10″ in all 35 d. 19′ 10″.

3. *To the Oblique Ascension of the* □ *of* ♄ *add 360 d. that so Substraction may be made and it will amount unto,* ——— 391d 29′ 00″

From which Substract	035	19	10
And there remains the Oblique ascension of the Horoscope	356	09	50

Unto which answers 20 d. 56′ ♓, *for the true Ascendent Rectified.*

From the Ob. Ascend.	356	09	50
Subst. the Quadrant 90 d.	90	00	00
Rests the R. Asc. M C.	266	09	50

Unto which answers ♐ 26 d. 28′ *omitting Seconds.*

4. *Lastly to finde the hour and minute of the day correspondent, I proceed thus, I take the Oblique ascension of the Ascendent of the estimate time agreeing* ♑ 18 d. 28′ ♈, *and thereunto add the Circle, that Substraction may be made, and the aggregate is* 367 d. 38′ *from which I Substract the true Corrected Oblique Ascention* 356 deg. 9′ 50″ *and there remains* 11 d. 28′ 10″, *which in time gives* 45′ 52″ 40‴ *you may omit the seconds and thirds, and say* 46′ *which Substracted from the estimate time* 6 h. 30′ *leaves,* March 11, 5 h. 44′ *A. M. for the true time Corrected.*

SECTION IV.

How to Rectifie a Nativity by the ☉or ☽.

1. *When you have an Accident of Note given, and cannot finde it agree with any direction of the M. C. or Aſcendent, then conſider the poſition of the Luminaries, and ſee to which of them it may moſt Rationally Correſpond, in the next place having pitcht upon the moſt probable ſignificator, you may nearly eſtimate by his place in the figure what Circle of poſition he is upon, (viz. how much the Pole is elevated above it), and having gueſſed at the Pole of poſition (either of the ☉ or ☽) direct him to the moſt ſignificant promitter under that Pole, noteing how much the Ark of Direction is wide or comes ſhort of the time of the Accident given.*

2. *Eſtimate (or gueſs) the ſecond time at the Pole of poſition, and accordingly work out the direction as before, having ſo done, note the difference between theſe two Directions, and by the Rule of Proportion you may finde the true Pole of poſition, and conſequently the exact Aſcendent: Reaſoning thus, If the difference of theſe two Arkes of Direction gives ſo much in the Pole of poſition, What ſhall the difference between the true direction and the nexteſt thereunto give in the Pole of poſition? &c. And thereby you will come to have the true Pole of poſition, and from thence the true Oblique Aſcenſion or Deſcenſion of the Luminary, his diſtance from the Meridian, and by Operation the figure Rectified, &c.*

Sect-

SECTION. V.

How to Rectifie a Nativity by the Trutine, or Scale of *Hermes*, that famous Perſon, and allowed by *Ptolomy* himſelf.

HErmes, *who is reputed by an Eminent Author, to have been the wiſeſt of men in his time, was of this Opinion; That the very degree of the ſame Signe wherein the* ☽ *was at Conception of the Childe, ſhould be the true degree of the Aſcendent at Birth. And Ptolomey ſaith look what Sign the* ☽ *is in at the time of Birth, make that very Signe the Aſcendent at Conception, and what Signe you finde the* ☽ *in at Conception, make that or its oppoſite the Signe Aſcending at Birth: This way of Rectification comes ſhort of that by Accidents, however becauſe ſome have much applauded it, I thought good to inſert it, leſt the Book without it would be thought deficient. Here is alſo a Table added different from that vulgarly uſed, and much more ready to finde the true Conception, by the Nativity, and the contrary.*

A Table for the ready finding Conception by the Nativity & Contra

Nativity Conception	Ian Ap	Feb Ma	Mar Iun	Ap Iul	Ma Au	Iun Sep	Iul. oct	Au. No	sep De	Oct Ian	No Fe	Dec Mar	Nativity Concept
☽ sub Terra, ab Ascendente in Nativitatibus	♌ D	♈	♉ S	♈	♉ S	♉ S	♉ S	♊	♉ S	♊	♋	♈ S	☽ sub Terra ab Ascendente in Conceptione
	0 0	2 3	0 1	0 0	0 0	0 0	0 1	0 0	0 2	6 0			
	0 13	1 2	1 ♋	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 ♋	1 1	1 1	5 17			
	0 26	♋ 1	2 1	2 2	2 2	2 2	2 1	2 2	♋ 2	5 4			
	1 9	1 ♋	3 2	3 3	3 3	3 3	2 3	3 3	1 4	4 21			
	1 21	2 1	4 3	4 4	4 4	4 3	4 4	4 2	4 9				
	2 4	3 2	5 4	5 5	5 5	5 4	5 5	5 3	3 26				
	2 17	4 3	6 5	6 6	6 6	6 5	6 6	6 4	3 13				
	3 0	5 4	7 6	7 7	7 7	7 6	7 7	7 5	3 0				
	3 13	6 5	8 7	8 8	8 8	8 7	8 8	8 6	2 17				
	3 26	7 6	9 8	9 9	9 9	9 8	9 9	9 7	2 4				
	4 9	8 7	10 9	10 10	10 10	10 9	10 10	10 8	1 21				
	4 21	9 8	11 10	11 11	11 11	11 10	11 11	11 9	1 9				
	5 4	10 9	12 11	12 12	12 12	12 11	12 12	12 10	0 26				
	5 17	11 10	13 12	13 13	13 13	13 12	13 13	13 11	0 13				
	6 0	12 11	14 13	14 14	14 14	14 13	14 14	14 12	0 0				

	♈	♈	♈	♈	♈	♈	♈	♈	♈	♈	♈	♈	
☽ supra terram, ab Occasu in Nativitatibus	6 0	2 3	0 1	0 0	0 0	0 1	0 0	0 1	0 0	0 1	0 0		☽ supra Terram ab Occasu in Conceptione.
	5 17	3 4	1 2	1 1	1 1	1 2	1 1	1 2	0 13				
	5 4	4 5	2 3	2 2	2 2	2 3	2 2	2 3	0 26				
	4 21	5 6	3 4	3 3	3 3	3 4	3 3	3 4	1 9				
	4 9	6 7	4 5	4 4	4 4	4 5	4 4	4 5	1 21				
	3 26	7 8	5 6	5 5	5 5	5 6	5 5	5 6	2 4				
	3 13	8 9	6 7	6 6	6 6	6 7	6 6	6 7	2 17				
	3 0	9 10	7 8	7 7	7 7	7 8	7 7	7 8	3 0				
	2 17	10 11	8 9	8 8	8 8	8 9	8 8	8 9	3 13				
	2 4	11 12	9 10	9 9	9 9	9 10	9 9	9 10	3 26				
	1 21	12 13	10 11	10 10	10 10	10 11	10 10	10 11	4 9				
	1 9	13 14	11 12	11 11	11 11	11 12	11 11	11 12	4 21				
	0 26	14 15	12 13	12 12	12 12	12 13	12 12	12 13	5 4				
	0 13	15 16	13 14	13 13	13 13	13 14	13 13	13 14	5 17				
	0 0	16 17	14 15	14 14	14 14	14 15	14 14	14 15	6 0				

SECTION VI.

The uſe of the table of Conception, &c,

THis is very eaſily underſtood, for the two uppermoſt rows of Months, the one ſhews the Month for the Nativity, and the other the anſwering Month of Conception, & Contra. Seek the ☽'s poſition from the Aſcendent or ſeventh houſe, in the ſides of the Table, either in the Nativity or conception, and the Month at head, in the Angle of meeting you have the dayes to be added or ſubſtracted, to or from the day of Birth or Conception.

2. *Note that if the ☽ be above the Earth in your figure eſtimate, viz, in the 12th, 11th, 10th, 9th, 8th or 7th houſe take her diſtance from the Cuſp of the Weſt angle or 7th houſe, but if ſhe be under the Earth, viz. in the 1ſt, 2d, 3d, 4th, 5th, or 6th houſe, take her diſtance from the Signe and Degree Aſcending, always ſubſtracting the Signes, Degrees, and Minutes of the Angles, from the Signe, Degree, and Minute of the ☽'s place, by adding 12 Signes where Subſtraction cannot be made, and with this diſtance enter the Table as above directed.*

3. *Let the ☽ in ſome Figure be above the Earth, and the day of Birth ſuppoſe April 13 Let the ☽'s diſtance from the 7th, be 1 Signe 21 Degrees. I look April at top, to which anſwers July for the month of Conception then I repair to the firſt great Collume on the left hand, againſt the ☽ ſupra Terram, ab Occaſu in Nativitatibus, and finde 1 Signe 21 Degrees. (or if I had not found my juſt number I ſhould accept the neareſt) and right under April, and againſt 1 S. 21 D. I finde 11 dayes*

to

to be added, (as the Letters directs) to the 13th *day, and that points out the* 24th *of* July *for the day of Conception; after the ſame manner, having the* ☽*s diſtance from the* 1ſt, *or* 7th *in the Figure of Conception, I repaire to the right hand Collume, and proceed as before, and finde the true day of Birth, from the Figure of Conception, &c. This ſhall be farther explained in the Examplary Geniture. Note that if the Year of your Birth be Leap Year you muſt add a day more.*

Note that having found the Conception, and ey that you deſire to finde the Birth-day, 'tis but the Invers to the former operation, ſeeking the ☽*s poſition on the right hand of the Table, and the Equation of dayes, add, or ſubſtract contrary to the letters A. or S. &c.*

4. *Laſtly, there are ſome other wayes, as the Animodar of* Ptolomey, *the Tranſits of the Planets upon the principal Places of the Geniture, and the directions of Profectional Figures* (viz. *the chief Angles thereof*) *to their ſeveral promittors, but ſince there is but ſmall certainty in any of theſe wayes to Rectifie a Nativity by, I ſhall not here trouble my ſelf to inſert them, for undoubtedly that, by accidents, is the moſt Rational, and hath the moſt probability of truth in it, and the onely way as yet known, to verifie the Geneſis of any Perſon,*

This is not onely my Opinion, but of all the moſt Eminent *Artiſts* this day living in *England*, who have ſufficiently confirmed this Doctrine by Experience, which is the beſt Moderater:

CHAP.

CHAPTER. II.

SECTION. I.

How to Reduce an Ephemerides (or Aſtronomical Tables) to another Meridian, and thereby Equate the difference of Meridians.

ALL men that are any thing knowing in the Doctrine of the Sphear, are Senſible that the ☉ riſes and ſets ſooner, to ſuch perſons as live in the Eaſt, then to thoſe that live more Weſterly, and by conſequence it muſt needs be Noon ſooner to ſuch as live more Eaſterly, then to thoſe that inhabit Weſt, for when it is Noon with thoſe Weſt, it is paſt Noon at the ſame moment with all ſuch as inhabit more Eaſterly; and ſo the ☉ appears above our Horizon that live Weſtward, when ſet in their Horizon that live Eaſt.

And upon this conſideration tis thought the Meridian circle was invented by the Aſtronomers of old; this Circle is one of the greateſt in the Sphear, paſſing by the Poles of the world, and the Zenith or Vertical points over our heads; and as ſoon as the ☉ touches this Circle in any City or place in the World, it is then Noon or Mid day with them.

1. Hence then you ſee all places in the world have dif-

ferent Zeniths, it consequently follows, that they may have different Meridians, also that as one place differs from another in Longitude; and the Longitude of any place is only an Arch of the Equinoctial, intercepted betwixt the first Meridian that passes through the *Canary Islands* and the Meridian of the proposed place: And this difference of Meridians is an Arch of the Equinoctial comprehended of 2 Meridians, (this *Arch*) being reduced into time, (by a Table for that purpose inserted in *Chap.* 3. *Sect.* 3 of this book) gives the difference of Meridians of any two places in Houres and Minutes, (or onely minutes &c.) for many places.

3. Now the way of Reduction of an Ephemeris, from one Meridian to another, is briefly thus, *viz.* If the 2 places proposed, lye both in the same Longitude, and so are Equally distant from the grand Meridian, *viz.* at the *Canary Islands* there needs no Reduction. But if the Longitude of your place be either greater, or lesser then the Longitude of that place for which your Ephemerides was calculated, then 'tis requisit there be an Equation of time, made for the difference of Meridians.

To perform which you must by some good Catalogue (or otherwise by observation) obtain the true longitude of your place, (which to do exactly I conceive will be found a matter of difficulty) and compare it with the Longitude of that place for which your Ephemerides was made, if your Longitude exceed that, then your place lyes more Eastward, but if it be less, more Westward; and by substracting the greater from the lesser you have the difference of Meridians desired, which you may convert into time according to the usual manner, you will finde Tables to this purpose in every Ephemerides, and what use you may make thereof shall immediately follow.

4. Having

4. Having explained what the difference of Meridians is, take this brief explaination of those Catalogues of places, and difference of Meridians, &c. The knowledge of which is absolutely necessary in the foundation of this present Subject. Let it be supposed in a Catalogue of places, with their difference of Meridians from *London*, I finde against *Uraniburge* 50 *m. A* this letter *A.* denotes it lyes East from *London*, and therefore if I would Reduce the Planets motions or aspects from *London* to *Uraniburge*, I must observe this Rule.

In the { motion / Aspect } { of the Planets from *London* to *Uraniburge* } { Sub. / Add } 50′ { from / to } { the given / Time }

But now on the contrary, because *London* lyes West from *Uraniburge*, (as in those Catalogues noted with *S.g.*) if I would reduce the motions or aspects of the Planets from *Uraniburge* to *London*, I must in this case work contrary according to this Rule.

In the { motion / Aspect } { of the planets from *Uranib* to *London* } { Add / Sub. } 50′ { to / from } { the given / Time. }

5. Hence then in places Oriental of your Ephemerides (usually noted with *A.*) in the motions of the Planets you are to substract, and in places Occidental (usually noted with S.) you are to add the difference of time, But in Eclipses, Aspects, Revolutions, and Ingresses the clean contrary. *viz.* In places East, Add, and in places West, Substract. &c.

SECTION. II.

Of the Equation of Time in respect of the Inequality of Natural dayes.

SOme there are, admit not of any such Equation, others will have the Inequallity proceed from these 2 causes, the first from the inequality of the ☉s motion, in the Zodiack; and the second from the obliquity thereof. But noble *Tycho Brathe* (that famous *Astronomer*,) makes the difference between the ☉ true Longitude and the Right Ascension to be the absolute Equation of Natural dayes; and this is most Ingeniously demonstrated, upon the Copernican Systeme, a Table whereof I have here inserted with its use.

A perpetual Table of the Equation of time for the Inequality of Natural dayes, in Minutes and Seconds of an hour.

D	♈ ♎ Add. M.	S.	♉ ♏ ♌ ♒ Add. M.	S.	♊ ♐ ♑ ♓ Add. M.	S.	♋ ♑ Subst. M.	S.	♌ ♒ Subst. M.	S.	♍ ♓ Subst. M.	S.	D
0	0	0	8	25	8	41	7	37	9	21	1	27	30
1	0	20	8	36	8	37	7	50	9	14	1	05	29
2	0	40	8	45	8	26	8	02	9	06	0	43	28
3	0	59	8	55	8	15	8	14	8	57	0	22	27
4	1	19	9	04	8	03	8	25	8	47	0	03	26
5	1	39	9	12	7	50	8	35	8	35	0	16	25
6	1	59	9	19	7	36	8	47	8	25	0	30	24
7	2	18	9	26	7	22	8	59	8	14	0	44	23
8	2	38	9	32	7	07	9	11	8	03	0	58	22
9	2	57	9	37	6	52	9	23	7	50	1	12	21
10	3	16	9	42	6	36	9	35	7	36	1	26	20
11	3	35	9	46	6	20	9	47	7	22	1	40	19
12	3	57	9	50	6	04	9	59	7	07	1	54	18
13	4	17	9	52	5	46	10	11	6	52	2	09	17
14	4	37	9	54	5	28	10	23	6	36	2	23	16
15	4	57	9	56	5	10	10	35	6	20	2	37	15
16	5	05	9	56	4	51	10	47	6	04	2	51	14
17	5	22	9	56	4	32	10	59	5	46	3	05	13
18	5	38	9	55	4	12	11	11	5	28	3	19	12
19	5	55	9	53	3	53	11	23	5	10	3	33	11
20	6	11	9	51	3	33	11	35	4	51	3	47	10
21	6	26	9	48	3	12	11	47	4	32	4	00	9
22	6	41	9	44	2	51	11	59	4	12	4	14	8
23	6	56	9	40	2	31	12	11	3	53	4	27	7
24	7	10	9	34	2	09	12	23	3	33	4	41	6
25	7	24	9	28	1	48	12	35	3	12	4	54	5
26	7	37	9	21	1	27	12	47	2	51	5	07	4
27	7	50	9	14	1	05	12	59	2	31	5	20	3
28	8	02	9	06	0	43	13	11	2	09	5	33	2
29	8	14	8	57	0	22	13	23	1	48	5	46	1
30	8	25	8	47	0	03	13	35	1	27	5	59	0

Enter this Table with the Signe and Degree of the ☉'s place either in the uppermost and left hand Collume descending, or in the lowermost and right hand Collume Ascending: and in the common Angle is the Æquation (according to the titles) to be Added, or Substracted to, or from the Equal time, that it may be made apparent. But to Reduce the apparent to the Equal take the contrary title.

2. Having the exact time of the Nativity Rectified, that you may Reduce the Planets places, to the true and apparent time, unto which all Clocks and Dyals agree. You are in the next place (after the Reduction of Meridians.) to make an Equation by this Table of Inequality of Natural dayes, and lastly to Reduce the Planets to that moment of time so Equated, thus the ☉ is 5 deg of ♏ October 18th just at Noon, I would know the Equation of time, &c. by the Table, against 5 d. in the first Collume to the left hand, and right under ♏ at top in the common Angle I finde the Equation 9′ 12″ to be added, to the equal time to make it apparent; So that the ☉ is not apparently in 5 d. ♏ till 9′ 12″ P. M. But to Reduce the apparent time to the Equal for which the Ephemerides is calculated, you are to use the contrary rules as before directed.

Number

Number	Names	The degr. of the Zodiak.	The degr. in time.	Og. of the Equi. that rise with the Signes	The time that the Signes continue in the Asc. Lat 51. 32.
Sig.	Cha	Gra.	Hor	D M	H M S
0	♈	0	0	13 2	00 52 12
1	♉	15 30	1 2	17 7	01 08 28
2	♊	45 60	3 4	26 36	01 46 24
3	♋	75 90	5 6	37 48	02 31 12
4	♌	105 120	7 8	42 41	02 50 44
5	♍	135 150	9 10	42 45	02 51 0
6	♎	165 180	11 12	42 46	02 51 4
7	♏	195 210	13 14	42 40	02 50 40
8	♐	225 240	15 16	37 48	02 31 12
9	♑	255 270	17 18	26 36	01 46 24
10	♒	285 300	19 20	17 8	01 08 32
11	♓	315 330	21 22	13 2	00 52 8
		345 360	23 24	360 0	24 00 00

This Table is so plain and easie that it needs no further Explaination then the bare titles.

A table of Logistical Logarithms,

M	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
0	*In fin*	31780	24849	20794	17917	15686	13862
1	72723	31616	2476	20739	17876	15653	13835
2	65792	31453	24684	20684	17835	15620	13807
3	62327	31294	2460²	20629	17793	15587	13780
4	58861	31135	2452¹	20575	17752	15554	13752
5	56834	30981	2444¹	20520	17711	15521	13725
6	54806	30827	24361	20466	17671	15488	13698
7	53367	30678	24281	20413	17630	15455	13670
8	51930	30526	24204	20359	17590	15423	13643
9	50814	30384	24126	20307	17558	15391	13616
10	49699	30239	24049	20254	17509	15358	13589
11	48787	30098	23972	20201	17469	15326	13562
12	47875	29957	23896	20149	17430	15294	13535
13	47104	29820	23821	20097	17390	15262	13509
14	46333	29684	23746	20045	17351	15230	13481
15	45666	29550	23672	19994	17311	15198	13455
16	44998	29417	23597	19943	17272	15166	13428
17	44409	29187	23524	19892	17233	15125	13402
18	43820	29157	23451	19841	17194	15153	13375
19	43393	29030	23375	19791	17156	15072	13349
20	42767	28904	23307	19741	17117	15041	13326
21	42290	28780	23237	19691	17079	15010	13296
22	41814	28657	23166	19641	17040	14978	13270
23	41379	28536	23096	19591	17002	14947	13244
24	40943	28416	23026	19543	16964	14916	13218
25	40543	28278	22957	19495	16927	14886	13191
26	40154	28182	22881	19445	16889	14855	13166
27	39772	28066	22820	19397	16852	14824	13140
28	39402	27951	22752	19349	16814	14794	13114
29	39057	27838	22671	19301	16777	14763	13088
30	38712	27726	22618	19253	16740	14733	13062

A Table of Logistical Logarithmes.

M	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
30	38712	27726	22618	19253	16740	14733	13062
31	38394	27616	22551	19205	16703	14703	13037
32	38067	27506	22485	19158	16666	14673	13011
33	37764	27399	22420	19102	16629	14643	12986
34	37466	27291	22354	19064	16593	14613	12960
35	37174	27186	22290	19018	16556	14583	12935
36	36889	27080	22225	18971	16519	14553	12912
37	36613	26997	22152	18925	16584	14524	12885
38	36348	26874	22068	18879	16448	14494	12858
39	36029	26773	22035	18833	16412	14444	12834
40	35835	26672	21972	18788	16376	14435	12809
41	35591	26573	21910	18742	16341	14405	12784
42	35347	26474	21818	18697	16305	14376	12759
43	35115	26377	21787	18652	16269	14347	12735
44	34882	26180	21725	18607	16234	14318	12710
45	34660	26185	21665	18563	16199	14289	12685
46	34437	26089	21604	18519	16164	14260	12660
47	34215	25996	21544	18474	16129	14231	12636
48	34012	25903	21484	18430	16094	14202	12611
49	33806	25817	21425	18387	16060	14173	12587
50	33604	25719	21366	18343	16025	14145	12562
51	33208	25629	21307	18300	15691	14106	12543
52	33211	25539	21249	18257	15956	14088	12514
53	33023	25450	21191	18214	15922	14059	12489
54	32834	25362	21133	18171	15888	14031	12465
55	32652	25275	21076	18129	15854	14003	12441
56	32470	25188	21019	18086	15820	13975	12417
57	32295	25103	20963	18043	15787	13947	12393
58	32119	25017	20906	18001	15753	13919	12369
59	31950	24934	20850	17959	15720	12801	12345
60	31780	24844	20794	17917	15686	13863	12321

A Table of Logistical Logarithmes.

M	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
0	12321	10986	9808	8755	7801	6931	6131	5390
1	12298	10965	9790	8738	7786	6918	6118	5378
2	12274	10944	9771	8721	7771	6904	6105	5366
3	12250	10924	9753	8705	7756	6890	6093	5354
4	12227	10903	9734	8686	7741	6876	6080	5342
5	12201	10882	9716	8672	7726	6862	6067	5331
6	12159	10862	9698	8655	7711	6848	6054	5319
7	12156	10841	9679	8639	7696	6835	6042	5307
8	12133	10821	9661	8622	7681	6821	6029	5293
9	12109	10800	9643	8606	7666	6809	6016	5283
10	12086	10780	9625	8589	7651	6795	6004	5272
11	12063	10759	9607	8573	7636	6779	5991	5260
12	12040	10739	9588	8557	7621	6765	5978	5248
13	12017	10719	9570	8540	7606	6752	5966	5236
14	11993	10699	9552	8524	7592	6738	5953	5224
15	11970	10678	9534	8508	7577	6725	5940	5213
16	11947	10658	9516	8491	7562	6712	5928	5201
17	11925	10638	9498	8475	7547	6698	5915	5190
18	11902	10618	9480	8459	7532	6684	5903	5178
19	11879	10598	9462	8442	7518	6671	5890	5166
20	11856	10578	9445	8427	7503	6657	5878	5155
21	11833	10558	9427	8411	7488	6644	5865	5143
22	11811	10538	9409	8394	7474	6630	5853	5131
23	11788	10518	9391	8378	7459	6617	5840	5120
24	11766	10498	9373	8362	7444	6604	5828	5108
25	11743	10478	9356	8346	7430	6590	5815	5097
26	11721	10459	9338	8330	7415	6577	5803	5085
27	11698	10439	9320	8314	7401	6563	5791	5074
28	11676	10419	9303	8298	7386	6550	5778	5062
29	11654	10399	9285	8284	7372	6537	5766	5050
30	11631	10380	9268	8267	7357	6523	5754	5039

A Table of Logistical Logarithmes.

M	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
30	11631	10380	9268	8267	7357	6523	5754	5034
31	11609	10360	9250	8256	7342	6511	5741	5027
32	11587	10341	9232	8235	7328	6497	5725	5016
33	11565	10321	9215	8219	7314	6483	5716	5005
34	11543	10302	9298	8293	7299	6470	5704	4993
35	11521	10282	9180	8188	7285	6457	5692	4987
36	11459	1026:	9163	8172	7270	6444	568c	4970
37	11477	10243	9146	8156	7256	6430	5668	4959
38	11455	10224	9128	8144	7242	6417	5655	4947
39	11433	10205	9111	8125	7227	6404	564:	4936
40	11412	10186	9094	8109	721:	6391	5631	4925
41	11390	10166	9077	8094	7199	6378	5619	4913
42	11368	10147	9059	8078	7185	6364	5607	4902
43	11347	10128	904:	8062	7170	6351	5594	4891
44	11325	10109	902:	8047	7156	6328	5582	4879
45	11304	10090	9008	8031	714:	6320	557:	4868
46	11282	10071	8991	8016	7128	6312	5558	48 6
47	11261	10052	8974	8001	7114	6299	554:	4845
48	11239	1003:	8957	7965	7099	6289	5534	4834
49	11218	10014	8946	7970	7085	6273	552:	4823
50	11197	9995	8923	7954	7071	6260	551c	4812
51	11175	9976	8909	7939	7057	6247	5498	4802
52	11154	9957	8889	7923	704:	6234	5486	4780
53	11133	9939	8872	7908	7029	6221	5474	4778
54	11112	9920	8855	7883	701:	6208	5462	4765
55	11091	9901	8838	7878	7001	6195	5450	4756
56	11070	9883	8821	7862	6987	6182	543:	4744
57	11049	9864	8805	7847	6973	6169	5426	4733
58	11028	9845	8788	7832	6959	6157	5414	4722
59	11007	9827	8771	7817	6945	6144	5402	4711
60	10986	9808	8755	7801	6931	6131	539c	4700

A Table of Logistical Logarithmes.

M	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
0	4700	4055	3448	2877	2336	1823	1335	870	425
1	4689	4044	3439	2867	2327	1816	1327	862	418
2	4678	4034	3429	2858	2319	1807	1319	855	411
3	4667	4023	3419	2849	2310	1798	1312	847	394
4	4656	4013	3409	2840	2301	1790	1304	840	397
5	4645	4003	3399	2831	2292	1783	1296	832	389
6	4634	3992	3390	2821	2284	1773	1288	825	382
7	4623	3982	3380	2812	2275	1765	1280	817	375
4	4612	3972	3370	2803	2266	1757	1272	810	368
9	4600	3961	3360	2794	2257	1748	1264	802	361
10	4589	3951	3351	2785	2249	1740	1256	795	353
11	4578	3941	3341	2775	2240	1732	1248	787	348
12	4567	3930	3331	2766	2231	1724	1240	780	339
13	4557	3920	3322	2757	2223	1715	1233	772	332
14	4546	3910	3314	2748	2214	1707	1225	765	325
15	4535	3900	3302	2739	2205	1699	1217	757	317
16	4524	3889	3393	2730	2197	1691	1209	755	310
17	4513	3879	3283	2721	2188	1682	1201	742	303
18	4502	3869	3273	2711	2179	1674	1193	735	296
19	4491	3859	3264	2702	2171	1666	1186	727	289
20	4480	3848	3254	2693	2162	1658	1178	720	282
21	4469	3838	3244	2684	2154	1650	1170	712	274
22	4458	3828	3235	2675	2145	1641	1162	705	267
23	4448	3818	3225	2666	2136	1633	1154	697	260
24	4437	3808	3216	2657	2129	1625	1147	690	253
25	4426	3797	3206	2648	2119	1617	1139	682	246
26	4415	3787	3197	2639	2111	1609	1131	675	239
27	4404	3777	3187	2630	2102	1601	1123	668	232
28	4394	3767	3177	2621	2093	1592	1116	660	225
29	4382	3757	3168	2612	2084	1584	1108	652	218
30	4372	3747	3158	2603	2076	1576	1100	645	210

A Table of Logistical Logarithmes.

M	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
30	4372	3747	3158	2603	2076	1576	1108	645	210
31	4361	3737	3149	2594	2068	1568	1092	638	203
32	4351	3727	3139	2585	2059	1560	1084	630	196
33	4340	3717	3130	2576	2051	1552	1077	623	189
34	4329	3707	3120	2567	2042	1544	1069	616	182
35	4318	3696	3111	2558	2034	1536	1061	608	175
36	4308	3686	3101	2549	2025	1528	1054	601	168
37	4297	3676	3092	2540	2017	1520	1046	594	161
38	4286	3666	3083	2531	2008	1511	1038	586	154
39	4276	3656	3073	2522	2000	1503	1030	579	147
40	4265	3646	3064	2513	1991	1495	1023	571	140
41	4254	3636	3054	2504	1983	1487	1015	564	133
42	4244	3626	3045	2495	1974	1479	1007	557	126
43	4233	3616	3035	2486	1966	1471	1000	549	119
44	4222	3606	3026	2477	1957	1462	992	542	112
45	4212	3596	3017	2469	1949	1455	984	535	105
46	4201	3587	3007	2460	1940	1447	977	527	98
47	4190	3577	2998	2451	1932	1439	969	520	91
48	4180	3567	2988	2442	1924	1431	961	513	84
49	4170	3557	2979	2432	1915	1423	954	506	77
50	4160	3547	2970	2424	1907	1415	946	498	70
51	4149	3537	2960	2415	1898	1407	938	491	63
52	4138	3527	2951	2407	1890	1399	931	484	56
53	4128	3517	2942	2398	1882	1391	923	476	49
54	4117	3507	2932	2389	1873	1382	916	469	42
55	4108	3497	2923	2380	1865	1375	908	462	35
56	4096	3488	2914	2371	1857	1367	900	455	28
57	4086	3478	2905	2362	1848	1359	893	447	21
58	4075	3468	2895	2354	1840	1351	885	440	14
59	4066	3458	2886	2345	1831	1344	878	433	07
60	4055	3448	2877	2336	1823	1235	870	425	0

SECTION III.

How to Reduce the Planets places to any hour of the Day or Night, as also to finde the hour and minute, that a Planet comes to any particular point in the Ecliptique.

1. *For the more Ready performance hereof, I thought it convenient to add this table of Logistical Logarithms, which are much easier then to work by vulgar Arithmetique, since nothing is required for the Planets Reduction, but Addition, and for the hour and minute when the* ☉, ☽, *(or any other Planet) touches his Radical place, &c. is performed onely by Substraction.*

2. *The Diurnal motion of any Planet is easily obtained if Direct, by substracting their places at Noon the day precedent, from their places at Noon the day subsequent; But if Retrograde the Contrary, viz. the day subsequent from day precedent.*

3. *The Table is figured at top with* 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6. *&c. and so from* 1 *to* 23. *And in the first Colume of each page is certain minutes, viz the left hand page from* 1′ *to* 30′, *and the right hand page from* 30′ *to* 60′, *so that in all it comprehends* 24 *hours at top and sides, which do not onely represent hours but degrees also, as Occasion requires, and their correspondent Logarithms in the common Angle, so the* Logistical Logarithme *of* 3 *hours (or degrees) and* 12′ *is* [20149] *the Log. of* 5h. 36′ *is* [14583] *of* 2h. 51′ [21307] *&c.*

4. *This being premised the use of the Table is this viz*

Enter

Enter the Table with the diurnal motion of a Planet, finding the degrees at head, and minutes in the first left hand Collume, and in the angle of meeting, take out the Logistical Logar. *thereof as before directed, 3 In the same manner take out the hours and minutes of time from Noon given, and lastly add these two Logarithmes together, and their summe is the* Logist. Logar. *of the degrees and minutes to be added to the Planets place, the precedent day at Noon, (or substracted from thence, in case he were Retrograde) and so you have his true place Reduced to the given time.*

5. *But if you would have the true moment when any Planet comes to a particular point of the Ecliptique, work thus, take the difference in deg and min. that the Planet wants of the desired point, take out also the Logarithme of this difference, from which substract the* Logist. Logar. *of the Planets diurnal motion, and the remainer is the Logarithm of the hours and minutes after Noon desired. Alwayes Remembring to take this caution, that if you finde not the* Logistical Logarithm *exactly to take the nearest, which you may safely do, with less then a minutes errour.*

6. *But if you desire greater exactnes then this Table will readily afford, there is a most excellent table of* Logistical Logarithmes *at the end of the Caroline Tables (which all Artists may furnish themselves withal) that performes all things of this nature with much facility and precizeness, in which you are also furnisht with a good Cannon of Sines and Tangents, as well as Tables for the exact Calculation of the Planets places, the Author of those tables Mr. T. S. hath well explained their use in the same Book, in many familiar and easie examples, page 90, 91, 92, 93. So that by his examples you are enabled by the help of those* Logistical Logarithmes, *to make*

all

all necessary proportions. If your first Number be above 60′ he directs you to take half, and the proportion will be the same, unto which I add that if your second number be above 60′ you may say as 60 is to the excess of the second number above 60, so is your third number to a 4th proportional number to be added to your third number. Example, suppose the propor. were as 60′ is to 87′, so 45′ to what?

	L. L.	
As 60 is to the excess above 60, viz. 27	3468	Add.
So is 20′ 15″	1249	
To 20′ 15″	4717	

Which added to 45′ your third number gives 65′ 15″ So that if 60′ gives 87′, 45′ gives 65′ 16″ and so in any other of this kind.

7. By these Tables you may make proportions for time and motion also, which the Author hath omitted to shew, and is briefly thus. First if you would reduce the Planets motion to a certain hour of the day, 'tis but adding the Logist. Log. of the Planets Diurnal motion, to the Logist. Log. of time P. M. and from their Summ abate the Log. Log. of 24 hours, viz. [3979] and you have the Logist. Log. of the deg. and min. or min. and seconds to be added. Secondly if you desire to know at what hour and minute a Planet, or Star comes to such a point of the Ecliptick, substract the Logist. Log. of the Planets Diurnal motion, from the Logist. Log. of 24 hours (aforesaid) added to the Logist. Logar. of the degrees and minutes the Planet wants of the desired point, and the remainer is the Logist. Log. of the hours and min. P. M. desired.

Example 1.

If the ☉s Diurnal motion be 58′, What doth he move in

in 2 hours? First by Mr. Streets Logistical Logar. I work thus. viz.

As the Logist. Log of 24 hours is to the L. L. of the ⊙s Diurnal motion 58′ so the L. L. 2 hours to the L. L. of 4′ 50″.

The L. L. of	*the ⊙ D. m. 58′*	147
	2 hours	14771 *added*
		14918 *Summ*
The L. L. of	*24 hours, subtract*	3979
	4′ 50″	10939 *Remains*

8, *But by the short Table hereunto added, (which is onely contracted for this very purpose, out of the learned* N. Durret) *I work thus.* viz.

The L. L. of	*58′*	32119 *added,*
	2 hours	24849
The L. L. 5′ ferè		56968 *Summe*

The nearest number in the table is [56834] *which stands against 5′, Ergo if the ⊙s motion be 58′ in 24 hours, 'tis 5′ (or more exactly 4′ 50″) in 2 hours.*

Example 2.

Suppose the ⊙ be 27 d. 55′ in ♈ at Noon, and his Diurnal motion 58′, I would know by Mr. Streets Logistical Logarithmes what hour and minute the ⊙ will be 28 d. 20′ of the same Signe. Here the ⊙ wants 25′ at Noon of the desired point.

Then say, as the L. L. of the ⊙ D. M. 58′ is to the

L. L of 24 hours, ſo is the L. L. of 25′ (that the ☉ wants of the point deſired) to the L, L, of 10 hours 21′ ferè.

The L. L. of { 24h. — 3979 / 25′ — 3802 } added

7781 Sum.

The L. L. of { 58′ — 147 Subſt. / 10h. 21′ ferè 7634

Laſtly, by theſe ſhort Tables work thus, viz.

The L. L. of { 25′ — 40543 / 58′ — 32119 } Subſtract

L, L, of 10 h, 20′ 8424 Remains

The neareſt to this I finde in the Table is 8427 which is the Logiſt. Log. of 10 hours 20′ and better, &c.

How to finde the time of the Aſpects by the Tables of *Logiſtical* Logarithmes.

1 GEt the Planets Diurnal motion, whoſe Aſpect you deſire to the day whereon you finde it will happen, and if the Planets be both Direct, or both Retrograde, let the leſſer Diurnal motion be Subſtracted from the greater; But in caſe the one happen to be Direct and the other Retrograde, Add both their Diurnal motions together, and their Summe or Aggregate, is their difference, or Diurnal exceſs.

2 The

2 *Take the Planets places (as you finde them noted in the Ephemeris) for the Noon preceding the Aſpect, and Subſtract that Planets place which is ſwifteſt in motion, from the place of the Planet which is ſloweſt, and the remainer is their diſtance in Longitude.*

3 *Subſtract the* Logiſtical Logarithme *of the aforeſaid Diurnal Exceſs, from the Logiſt. Logar. of their difference (or diſtance) in Longitude and the remainer is the Logarithme of the hours and minutes after Noon that the aſpect happens, which by Arithmetick is performed by this proportion, As the Diurnal exceſs is to 24 hours, ſo the diſtance of the 2 Planets to the true time of the Aſpect.*

Example.

October 15th 1667 there happened a Square Aſpect between ♄ *and* ♀, *and I deſire to know the true time thereof; according to the foregoing Rules I operate thus, viz.*

			d	′			d	′
Oct. 15 at Noon	♄	is in	26	1 ♍	Diurnal motion of	♄	0	3
	♀		24	54 ♎		♀	1	15

Their difference in Longitude 1 d. 7′.
Diurnal exceſs 1 d. 12′

Then ſay if 1 d. 12′ (*or* 72′) *requires* 24 h. *what* 1 d. 7′ (*or* 67′) *Anſwer* 22 *hours* 20′. *By theſe* Logiſt Log. *thus*

Logiſt. Log. of	1 d. 7′	30678	
	1 12	29957	Subſt.
	22 h. 20′	00721	00721

Or by Mr. Streets Logistical Logarithmes *thus,*

Logist. Log. *of*

1 d 7′	17302	*ad,*
24 h.	03979	
	21281	*sum,*
1 d 12′	16990	*subst*
22 h 20′	4291	

as before

Note that this is nothing different from that way of operation in finding the time when a Planet comes to a particular point of the Ecliptique, But onely in this, instead of the Planets Diurnal motion there used, here is taken the Planets Diurnal excess, Because both Planets have a motion and so come to an Aspect, but in the other Case onely one Planet moves to a point the time thereof being required, &c,

I have been the larger upon this, because, it is exceeding useful, and I would willingly make it as plain as may be to the meaneſt apprehenſion: There be many Tables for this purpose as Mr, Shakerly's, *Mr,* Newton's, *and others, But Mr,* Streets *are inferiour to none, and in my opinion (for General use) the best extant, But let every man use those he best affects, and before I conclude this Section take one useful Example more,* Viz. [How to Equate the Cusps of the Houses, found in any Table of houses &c.] *by the said Table of* Logistical Logarithmes.

1. *Let the* ☉ *be supposed in* 5 d. 20′ m *I turne to the Tables of houses for the Latitude of the place (as suppose of* London*) under the Collume of the* 10th *house in the page* ☉ *in* m, *I finde against* 5 d. 14 h. 10′ 48″ *and under* 6 deg. *I finde* 14h 14′ 40″ *in the first Collume, their difference is* 3′ 52″, *Now because I have*

20′

20′ *more belonging to the* ☉ *place, I muſt Equate for them thus, viz. If* 1 d, *or* 60′ *gives* 3′ 52″ *or* 232″ *what will* 20′ *or* 1200″ *give.*

The Logiſt, Logar, of { 3′ 52″ — 11508 } *adde*
{ 20 0 — 4771 }

L, L, 1′ 18″ *ferè* 16679.

Here note becauſe 60 *is the firſt number I add the L, L. together, and their Summ is the L. L. of the* 4th *proportional number, now I add this* 4th *number* 1′ 18″ *to the number I finde in the firſt Collume under the title time from Noon, againſt* 5 deg. *of the* 10 *houſe thus.*

And ſo I have the true Right Aſcenſion in time belonging to the ☉*s place* 5 d, 20′ ♏, *unto which I add my time from Noon, for which I would ſet my Figure agreeable to the* ☉ *place, viz.* 2 h, 14′ 32″ *as in the Margin, and it amounts to* 16 h, 26′ 38″ *which is the true Right Aſcenſion of the M, C, or* 10th *houſe unto which I would finde the degrees and minutes of the Signes correſpondent, thus, viz.*

h	/	//	
14	10	48	
00	1	18	*add*
14	12	06	
2	14	32	*T, P, M, add*
16	26	38	

		h	/	//
The next { *Greater* } *time from*		16	29	8
{ *Leſſer* } *Noon is*		16	24	52
	1 *Diff.*	0	4	16
The true R, A, of time is		16	26	38
The next leſſer Subſtract		16	24	52
	2 *Diff,*	00	01	46

2 *Then I say as the difference of the greater and lesser Ark* 4′ 16″ *is to* 60′, *so is the difference between the next lesser Arke and the true R. A. of time, viz.* 1′ 46″ *to* 24′ 51″ *which is the* 4th *proportional to be added to* 8 d. *of* ♐, *which answers in the Tables of houses to the Cusp of the* 10th *house against* 16b24′ 52″ *and so the true Cusp of the M. C. is* ♐ 8 d, 24′ 51″,

The work is thus,

The Logist. Log. of	1′ 46″	——	15310	
	4 16	——	11481	*Substract,*
L. L. of	24 51	——	3829	

Here note because 60′ *is the second number I Substract, &c*

3 *To finde the Exact Cusp of the* 11th *house proceed thus, viz. The Cusp of the* 11th *house agreeable to* 8 d ♐ *upon the* 10th *is* 21d, 20′ ♐, *which substracted from the next greater, viz,* 22 d, 16′ ♐, *leaves* 56′ *the difference,*

Then Reason thus, If 60′ *or* 1 d, *of the* 10th *gives* 56′ *difference, what shall* 24′ 51″ *(that belongs to the Cusp of the* 10th *house before found) give. Answer* 23′ 12″ *to be added to* 21 d, 20′, ♐, *and so the true Cusp of the* 11th *house is* ♐ 21 d, 43′ 12″ *as appears by the work.*

The Logist. Log of	56′	*is* ——	300	*add*
	24′ 51″	——	3829	
L. L.	23 12		4129	

After the same manner as you Æquate for the 11th *house, work for the* 12th, 1st, 2d, *and* 3d, *and having the* 6 *Oriental houses, the* 6 *Occidental houses are the opposite Signes and Degrees, as hath been hinted before.*

The

The Cusps of the houses in the Table of houses, against 16h. 24′ 52″ in the Collume of time from Noon are thus, viz.

houſ,	d,	′			d,	′		houſes
X	8	0	♑	*But being Æ-*	8	25	♑	X
XI	21	20	♑	*quated as before*	21	43	♑	XI
XII	7	32	♒	*directed, they pre-*	7	58	♒	XII
I	9	52	♒	*ſent themſelves*	10	37	♒	I
II	12	48	♈	*thus, (omitting*	13	42	♈	II
III	10	24	♉	*Seconds.)*	10	56	♉	III

By this Example, may the Cuſps of the houſes be Æquated in any Figure, by the help of thoſe Tables, with much eaſe, and no leſs exactneſs.

SECTION IV.

How theſe Sexagenary Logiſtical Logarithmes *may be made, by the help of the* Logarithmetical *Tables of abſolute Numbers.*

[What the Arithmetical Complement is, and how to take it, ſhall be ſhewed when the uſe of a Canon is Explained]

1 LEt the Arithmetical Complement of the abſolute Number of 3600 (which are the Seconds in an houre) be added to the Logarithme of every ſuch Integer from 1 to the ſucceedent number, and it ſhall make the *Logiſtical Logarithmes* in ℱ. *Keplar*, and thoſe in Mr. *Newton*

Newtons help to calculation, as also those in *Shakerleys* Abbreviation.

Example 1.

The Logar. of 3600″ Com. *Arith.* —	64436975
The Logar of 1800″ in 30′ ———	32551725
The *Logist*, *Log*, Correspondent ---	96989700

2 Let the *Arithmetical* Complement of the *Logarithme* 1440 (the Minutes in 24 hours) be added to the *Logar.* of every Integer from 1 to that Number and the Summ will be the *Logist. Logar*, for hours and minutes.

Example 2

The *Logar.* of 1440′ Comp. *Arithm.*	68416375
The Logar. of 720′ in 12 houres is	28573325
The *Logist. Logar.* correspondent	96989700

As you may see in *Shakerleys* Table, &c,

3 Mr, *Streets* are the Arithmetical Complement of Mr, *Newtons*, and may be made by inverting the terms thus.

Example 3

The Logar. of the absolute Number 3600″ is	3,556303
The Logar. of 240″ in 4′ Comp. *Arith*, is	7,610889
The *L*, *L*. correspondent (abating Radius, 1)	1176192

Lastly,

Laſtly thoſe in *Durrets* Ephemerides, the proportion is Inverted by a ſecond operation, &c.

4 By thoſe *Logarithmes* of abſolute numbers may proportions be wrought in minutes and ſeconds, &c. *And* in this caſe 'tis beſt to ſuppoſe each degree to be divided into 100 parts or Centiſmes.

Suppoſe I would Equate for the Right Aſcenſion of a Star or Planet by the *Logarithmes*, I proceed thus.

Let the ☉ be ſuppoſed to be in 12 *d*. 25 parts of ♈

		d	parts.
The Right *Aſcenſion* of	13 deg.	12	73
	12 deg.	11	82
	Diff.		91 parts

Logar.

Then I ſay if 1d. give 91 parts — 19590413
what ſhall 25 parts give — 13979400

They give 22 and better — 23569813

Note that if 4 numbers are proportional, you may add the *Logarithme* of the 2d and 3d and from their Summe Subſtract the *Logar*, of the 1ſt and the remainer is the *Logar*, of the 4th required, or if you take the Arithmetical Complement of the *Logar*, of your firſt number, you may add the three *Logar*, together, and their ſumme is the *Logar*. of the 4th, which ſhall be farther explained in its proper place, or you may Reduce your minutes and ſeconds all into ſeconds, and ſo work out your proportion, &c.

ny
, are
and 3d
number,
and

Cha

CHAPTER III.

SECTION I.

The Explanation and uſe of a Canon of Artificial Sines and Tangents.

BEcauſe I ſhall have occaſion to make uſe of thoſe Tables in the following work, it will be neceſſary to ſhew their uſe, which is briefly thus, *viz.*

1 Having an Ark, or Angle, of any degree, being given, to finde the *Artificial Sine* or *Tangent* thereof.

When the Number of degrees are leſs then 45, you will finde the degrees in the head of the Canon, and the minutes in the firſt Collume on the left hand ſigned by the letter *M* (uſually) and juſt over againſt thoſe minutes and right under the title (Sine) you ſhall have the Logarithm or artificial Sine, and under the title (Tangent) you ſhall finde the artificial Tangent of the Arke or Angle deſired. Thus the Sine of 6 *d.* 12′ is [9033421] and the Tangent of the ſame Arch is [9035909] and ſo of any other Arch under 45 *deg.*

But if your Arch exceed 45 *d.* ſeek them at the bottom of the ſame Table, and the minutes in the firſt Collume to the Right-hand, marked uſually with *M.* and juſt againſt the Degree and Minute deſired, you have the Sine and Tangent correſpondent, thus the Tangent of 58 *d* 9′ is [10,206744] and the Sine of that Arch is [9,929129]

Note

Note that if your Arke or Angle given exceed 90 *d.* you are to ſeek the *Complement* thereof to 180 *d.* for your Canon exceeds not 90 *d.* (or a Quadrant.)

2 To finde the deg. and min. anſwering to any Sine or Tangent given is but the contrary work; For finde out your number in the Table, (or the neareſt) and in the top or bottom you ſhall have the degree, and in the firſt right or left hand Collume the minute correſpondent, this is obvious to the meaneſt capacity, and therefore needs no more words.

3 The Sine of the *Complement* or Tangent complement of an Arke, or angle, is what the given Arch wants of 90 *d* vulgarly, and for brevity ſake called *Coſine*, and *Cotangent* Thus the Coſine of 21 *d*, 36′ is the Sine of 68 *d*. 24′ *viz*. [9968378] and the *Cotangent* of the ſame Arch [10402384]

4 The Arithmetical *Complement* of an artificial, or *Logarithme* Sine or Tangent is the Remainer of any *Logarithme* ſubſtracted out of the *Logarithme* of 10 *viz*. 10000000, as thus, ſuppoſe I would have the Arithmetical *Complement* of the Sine 25 *d* 10′ [9,628647] which ſubſtracted out of 1 with Cyphers, &c, leaves 0371353 for the *Arithmetical Complement* of the ſine required, which is more readily performed thus, Begin at the firſt figure to the left hand, and ſet down the *Complement* of of them all ſeverally to 9, onely the laſt towards the Right hand unto 10 thus in the aforeſaid Sine the *Complement* of 9 is 0, of 6 to 9 is 3, of 2 'tis 7, of 8, 1, of 6, 3, of 4, 5 and of 7 to 10, 3, which is the ſame as before,

5 The uſe that is made of this is briefly thus, in any proportion where three numbers of Sines or Tangents, are given to finde a fourth, tis uſual to add the 2*d* and 3*d* together, and from their Summ ſubſtract the firſt number,

and

and the Remainer is the Logarithme of the 4th required,

But if you take the Arithmetical Complement of the first number you may add all three together, and their Summ (abating Radius) shall be the Logarithme of the 4th as before,

Example 1.

As the Sine of 8 d	9,143555	Substract
to the Tan. of 8 d	9,147803	add
So the Tan, 10 d	9,267969	add
Summ	18415772	
to the S,10 d 48′ fere	9272217	

Example 2.

As S. 8d, Comp. Arith,	0856445	add
to the Tang, 8 d,	9,147803	add
So the Tan, 10 d,	9.267969	
To the S 10d, 48′ fe è	19,272217	

Thus you see by taking the Arith. Comp. there is a Substraction saved, and the work the same, which is the easiest way, and most fit to be practised in operation, for by this means you use onely addition in all your work, &c,

Sect-

SECTION II.

How to finde the neareſt Diſtance of a Star (or Planet) from the next Æquinoctial, or Solſtical point.

IT will be very neceſſary in *Aſtronomical* operations, that the *Artiſt* ſhould have ſome Rule, readily to finde this, which will be of frequent uſe in working by a Canon of Sines and Tangents, &c.

1 If you would account from the neareſt Æquinoctial point ♈ or ♎ take this Rule,

That if the ſtar or Planet be in
- ♈ ♎ his *longitude*
- ♉ ♍ add 30d
- ♊ ♐ add 60d

to his *longitude*

- ♋ ♑ The *Comp.* of his *long.* to 90d
- ♌ ♒ Subſt. the *long.* out of 60 d
- ♍ ♓ Subſt. cut of 30

the reſidue

is the ſtars diſt. from the next Æquinoctial point required.

2 If you would account from the next Solſtitial point ♑ or ♋ obſerve,

That if the Star or Planet be in
- ♈ ♎ the *Comp.* of the *long* to 90 d
- ♉ ♍ Sub. the *lon.* 60 d
- ♊ ♐ Subſt. out of 30

the reſidue

- ♋ ♑ his preſent *longitude*
- ♌ ♒ add 30 d
- ♍ ♓ add 60

to his *longitude*

is the ſtars diſt. from the next Solſtitial point.

3 If your Planet be in ♈ ♉ ♊ ♑ ♒ ♓ / ♎ ♍ ♐ ♋ ♌ ♍ the diſtance found is accounted from ♈ or ♑ / ♎ or ♋

But to make this the more plain and eaſily underſtood I have Inſerted this following Table, which performes this work by Inſpection, if the premiſſes be but well conſidered.

A Table shewing the distance of the Degrees of the signes from the beginning of ♈ or ♎, ♉ or ♏.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
♈	0	♍	90	♎	0	♏	90
5	5	5	85	5	5	5	85
10	10	10	80	10	10	10	80
15	15	15	75	15	15	15	75
20	20	20	70	20	20	20	70
25	25	25	65	25	25	25	65
30	30	30	60	30	30	30	60
♉	0	♒	0	♍	0	♐	0
5	35	5	55	5	35	5	55
10	40	10	50	10	40	10	50
15	45	15	45	15	45	15	45
20	50	20	40	20	50	20	40
25	55	25	35	25	55	25	35
30	60	30	30	30	60	30	30
♊	0	♓	0	♐	0	♑	0
5	65	5	25	5	65	5	25
10	70	10	20	10	70	10	20
15	75	15	15	15	75	15	15
20	80	20	10	20	80	20	10
25	85	25	5	25	85	25	5
30	90	30	0	30	90	30	0
♋	0	♈	0	♑	0	♎	0

The use of this Table is Briefly thus, and first for a Stars distance from the Æquinoxial point.

1 *Suppose a Planet in* 15 d. *of* ♉ (*as in the* 1*st Collume*) *he is then* 45 d. *from the beginning of* ♈ (*noted in the second Collume*) *So a Planet in* 10 d. *of* ♐ *noted in the* 5*th Coll. is* 70 d. *from the* 1*st point of* ♎ *noted in the* 6*th Coll.*

2 *Let a planet be* 10d. *in* ♍ (*noted in the third Collume*) *he is* 80 d. *from the first point of* ♈ *noted in the* 4*th Coll. or a Planet in* 20 d. *of* ♋ (*noted in the* 7*th Collume*) *is* 70 d. *from the first point of* ♎ *noted in the last Collume.*

3 *But if you would know a Stars distance from the begining of* ♋ *or* ♍, *suppose a Planet* 10 d. *in* ♒ (*as in the* 3*d Coll.*) *he is* 40 d. *from the* 1*st point of* ♍ (*as in the second Collume*) *So a Planet in* 15 d. *of* ♏, (*as in the* 7*th Collume*) *is* 75 d. *from the begining of* ♋ (*noted in the* 6*th Collume.*

4 *Although their distance are set down but to every* 5 *degrees, yet you may from those numbers finde a stars distance let his Longitude be what it will, by a mental Addition or Substraction of your overplus number, in the several Collumes, As suppose a Planet in* 18d. *of* ♉ *for the which I add* 3 *to the* 15 d. (*in the* 1*st Collume*) *and I also substract* 3 *from* 45 d. *in the* 4*th Collume and his distance is* 42 d. *from the begining of* ♍. Et sic in aliis.

I should not have been so large upon these particulars, but for the sake of Tyro's *and would not willingly leave any thing obscure.*

In the next place I shall present the Reader with the whole Fabrick, neatly contracted into this Platforme, by my loving friend Mr. J. E. (*a most excellent Mathematitian*) *which I have in many particulars enlarged to compleat the Work.*

Sick,

SECTION III.

Exhibiting a brief *Synopsis* of all the Propositions that are useful in the Doctrine of Directions by a Cannon of Sines and Tangents onely.

1 TO *Convert hours and minutes &c, into degrees and minutes, &c.*

Put a Cypher behinde the hours to the Right hand, and under them set half the said Summ, and under that one fourth of the minutes and seconds adhering, and the Sum will be the degrees desired.

Example

Suppose 12 h or 24′ 44″ *to be turned into degrees.*

	d	′	″
The hours with a Cypher —	220	00	00
Half of which is —	110	00	00
One fourth of 24′ *is* —	006	00	00
One fourth of 44″ *is* —	000	11	00
The Sum in degrees is	336	11	00

This is a ready way to carry in memory if you have no Table for this purpose at hand.

But because some may affect a table to perform this, much better, I have also added in hereunto with its use.

A Table of converting Æquinoctial Degrees into hours and minutes of time, and the Contrary.

D	H	M	D	H.	M	D.	H	M
1	0	4	31	2	4	70	4	40
2	0	8	32	2	8	80	5	20
3	0	12	33	2	12	90	6	0
4	0	16	34	2	16	100	6	40
5	0	20	35	2	20	110	7	20
6	0	24	36	2	24	120	8	0
7	0	28	37	2	28	130	8	40
8	0	32	38	2	32	140	9	2
9	0	36	39	2	36	150	10	0
10	0	40	40	2	40	160	10	4
11	0	44	41	2	44	170	11	2
12	0	48	42	2	48	180	12	0
13	0	52	43	2	52	190	12	40
14	0	56	44	2	56	200	13	20
15	0	60	45	3	0	210	14	0
16	1	4	46	3	4	220	14	40
17	1	8	47	3	8	230	15	20
18	1	12	48	3	12	240	16	0
19	1	16	49	3	16	250	16	40
20	1	20	50	3	20	260	17	20
21	1	24	51	3	24	270	18	0
22	1	28	52	3	28	280	18	40
23	1	32	53	3	32	290	19	20
24	1	36	54	3	36	300	20	0
25	1	40	55	3	40	310	20	40
29	1	44	56	3	44	320	21	20
27	1	48	57	3	48	330	22	0
28	1	52	58	3	52	340	22	40
29	1	56	59	3	56	350	23	20
30	2	0	60	4	0	360	24	0
M	M	S	M	M	S	M	M	S

The use of the foregoing Table is briefly thus.

With your Æquinoctial Degrees enter this Table in the Collume marked with D. and having found your Degrees the Number right against them under the Collume marked with H. M. gives the hours and minutes.

If you have minutes belonging also to your Æquinoctial Degrees, enter with them in the Collume under D. marked at the bottom M. and the Number right against them gives the Minutes and Seconds of an hour Correspondent. But if you would have the Degrees of the Æquinoctial answering to time, work contrary, i. e. Finde your Hours and Minutes under H. M. and your Degree stands right against them.

Examples are needless in a matter so obvious.

2. To

2. *To finde the Declination and Right Ascension of any Planet in the Ecliptique, (his place being given.)*

To the { Sine / Tangent } of 23d. 30′ add the { Sine / Co-sine } of the distance from ♈ or ♎ & the sum is the { Sine / Tangent } of the { Declinatio / R. Ascen

3. *Having the Right Ascension or Declination to find the Longitude correspondent.*

To the Comp. Arithmet. { Sine / Co-sine } of 23d. 30′ add the { Sine, / Tang. } of the { Declin. / R. Asc. } the sum is the { Sine / Co-tan } of the Planets Longit.

4. *To finde the Declination and Right Ascention of any Planet or Starr having Latitude from the Ecliptique.*

To the Sine of the Longitude from ♈ or ♎ add the Co-tangent of the Latitude, and the Summ is the Tangent of the first Arch.

When the Long. is { ♈ ♉ ♊ ♋ ♌ ♍ / ♎ ♏ ♐ ♑ ♒ ♓ } and Latit. { North ſub. South add / North add South ſubſt. } 23 d, 30′ to or from the firſt Arch, and the Summ or Remainer is the ſecond Arch.

To the Com Arithmet. { Co-ſine / Sine } { firſt Arch and } { Co-ſine / Sine } { ſecond: add the } { Sine Lat. / Tan. Lon } { the ſum is the } { Sine Declin. / Tan. R. Aſ. }

(48)

5. *To finde the diſtance of a Star (in Right Aſcenſion) from the Meridian.*

If the Star be between the { M.C. and Horoſcope / West angle } { I. C. and 7th houſe / Aſcendent } { ſubſtract the Right Aſcenſion of the } { M. C. / Star. / I. C. / Star } { from the R. Aſce. of the } { Star / M.C. / Star / I. C. } { and what remains is the diſtanc from the Meridian. }

Which is no more but this. if the ſignificator ſhall be between the Aſcendent and Meridian above the Earth Or between the West Angle and Meridian under the Earth; then ſubſtract

the R. Aſcenſion of the Meridian, from the Right Aſcenſion of the Significator.

But if the Significator be in the oppoſit part of Heaven, let your operation be juſt contrary.

Note that,

If the Long. or the R. Aſcenſion ſought be in ♈ ♉ ♊ Take the ſame Arch as comes forth — and you have the true Right Aſcen. of the point ſought

If the Long. or the R. Aſcenſion ſought be in ♋ ♌ ♍ Take the Comp. of the Arch found to 180 d. — and you have the true Right Aſcen. of the point ſought

If the Long. or the R. Aſcenſion ſought be in ♎ ♏ ♐ Add 180 to the Arch found — and you have the true Right Aſcen. of the point ſought

If the Long. or the R. Aſcenſion ſought be in ♑ ♒ ♓ Subſtract the Arch found from 360 d. — and you have the true Right Aſcen. of the point ſought

6. *To find the Aſcenſional difference under his Pole of Poſition, and by that the Poles Elevation above the Circle of poſition of any Star or Planet.*

When the ſignifi. ators declination ſhall be

North above or South under the earth — as the Sine of the ſumm of the Æquinoctial height and declination to the Sine of their diff. — So the Tan of the half diſtance from the Meridian, to the Tan of an Arch, the diff between which & the half diſt. is the Aſcenſ. diff under the proper pole of poſitiõ

South above or North under the earth — as the Sine of the diff. of the Æquinoctial height and the declination to the ſine of the ſum — So the Tan of the half diſtance from the Meridian, to the Tan of an Arch, the diff between which & the half diſt. is the Aſcenſ. diff under the proper pole of poſitiõ

Then for the Poles Elevation, Add the Co-tangent of the Declination to the Sine of the difference of Aſcenſion (abating Radius) their Summ is the Tangent of the Pole of Poſition required,

---

7. To find the oblique Aſcenſion, or Deſcenſion of a Significator or Promittor.

When the declin. is { North ſub / South add / North add / South ſubſt } the difference of Aſcenſion { from / to / to / from } the Right Aſcens and you have the Oblique { Aſcenſion. / Deſcenſion. }

---

8. To finde the Oblique Aſcenſion or Deſcenſion of your Promittor, firſt obtain his Aſcenſional difference thus.

Add the Tangent of the promittors Declination to the Tangent of the Poles Elevation (above the Circle of poſition of your Significator) and the Summ (abating Radius) is the Sine of the Aſcenſional Difference required.

Now

Now having RA Declination and Aſcenſional difference you may eaſily find the oblique Aſcenſion or Deſcenſion by the 7th propoſition, from which ſubſtracting the Oblique Aſcenſion or Deſcenſion of your Significator, the remainder is the Ark of direction.

Note that

If your Significator be poſited in the 10th, 11th, 12th, 1ſt, 2d, or 3d. *houſes he is to be directed by Oblique Aſcenſion. But if in the* 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, 8th, *or* 9th. *houſes by Oblique Deſcenſion: Except you will direct the oppoſit point of the Significator, which is the caſieſt way.*

Theſe 8 *propoſitions are ſufficient for the whole buſineſs of directing by* Trigonometry *which ſhall be cleared by Examples in its proper place. However I ſhall here preſent the Reader with ſome other varieties of this kinde, (which perhaps may be grateful to the ſons of Art.)*

---

9. *How to obtain a certain Arch of the Circle of Poſition, by which you may find the Oblique Aſcenſion or Deſcenſion both of Significator and Promitter, and ſo direct as before. Or by this Arch of the Circle of poſition, the Elevation of the Pole, &c. With much eaſe and exactneſs.*

---

1. *Firſt take half the diſtance of your Significator in Right Aſcenſion from the* 10th *or* 4th *houſe, according as he is poſited above or under the earth.*

If the Planet have
- North, Declination above the Earth → take the Complement of the Declination to 90 deg.
- South, Declination above the Earth → take the Complement of the Declination to 90 deg.
- South, Declination under the Earth → Add the Declination and 90d
- North, Declination under the Earth → Add the Declination and 90d

2. *Unto which ſumm ſo found, add the Latitude of the place of Birth, and thereby gain their ſumm and difference.*

3. *Add the Arithmetical Complement of the Sine of the Summ (or Complement unto 180 d. if it exceed 90 d.) and the Sine of their difference, to the Tangent of half the Significators diſt. from the Meridian: and their ſum ſhall be the Tangent of an Arch, which added to the aforeſaid half diſt from the Meridian, is an arch of the circle of poſition required.*

4 If the Sigificator be poſited in
- 10, 11, 12 houſes: add / ſubſt. the Circle of poſition from R. Aſc. of M. C gives the Oblique Aſcen / Deſc. for the ſignificat.
- 7, 8, 9 houſes: add / ſubſt. the Circle of poſition from R. Aſc. of M. C gives the Oblique Aſcen / Deſc. for the ſignificat.
- 4, 5, 6 houſes: add / ſubſt. the Circle of poſition from R. Aſc. of I. C gives the Oblique Aſcen / Deſc. for the ſignificat.
- 1, 2, 3 houſes: add / ſubſt. the Circle of poſition from R. Aſc. of I. C gives the Oblique Aſcen / Deſc. for the ſignificat.

5. For the Aſcenſional Difference of your Promittor that you would Direct unto under this Circle, 'tis found thus, add the Arithmetical Complement of the Co-tangent of the Latitude of the place, the Tangent of the promittors declination and the Sine of the Circle of poſition together, abating Radius, and their ſumm is the Sine of the Aſcenſional difference. By which you may obtain his Oblique Aſcenſion or Deſcenſion as before directed prop. 7. And thus you may direct (if you pleaſe) under this Circle onely.)

But now if you would know the Elevation of the Pole above the Circle of poſition, from this Arch laſt found, and ſo prove the truth of your work, viz. See if your Arkes of Direction will agree the way with the other 'tis thus eaſily obtained.

To the Sine of this Arch of the Circle of Poſition add the Tangent of the Latitude of the place (alwayes abating Radius) and their ſumm is the Tangent of the Elevation of the Pole above the Circle of poſition (vulgarly called the Circle of poſition.)

Or having this Pole of poſition and would know this Arch of the Circle. 'Tis but adding the Cotangent of the Latitude of birth to the Tangent of the Pole of poſition and their ſumm is the Sine of the Circle required.

---

10 How to ſet a figure artificially the Rational way.

To the time afternoon in degrees (allowing 15 d. to an hour by the Table at the begining of this Section) add the Right Aſcenſion of the ☉ and the ſumm is the Right Aſcenſion of the 10th houſe, to which add 30 d. and

you

you have the oblique Aſcenſion of the 11th houſe, unto which again add 30 deg. and you have the Oblique Aſcenſion of the 12th houſe, And ſo by a continual Addition of 30 deg. I finde the Oblique Aſcenſion of all the houſes from the 10th to the 4th houſe, &c.

Now for the Reſolving of the Triangle for the Cuſps of the houſes thereare two wayes.

1 For the Cuſp of the 10th houſe add the Co-tangent of the Right Aſcenſion of the M. C. to the Co-ſine of 23d. 30′. their ſumm (abating Radius) is the Cotangent of the Cuſp of the 10th houſe from that Æquinoctial point your R. A. was taken.

2. To the Sine of { 30 deg. / 60 deg } add the Tangent of the Latitude and the Summ is the Tangent of the Pole of the { 9,11.3. and 5. / 8,12,2, and 6 } houſes.

3. To the Co-ſine of the Oblique Aſcenſion of the houſe from ♈ or ♎ add the Co-tangent of the Pole of the houſe, and the ſumm is the Catangent of the firſt Angle.

When

When the Oblique Aſcen. is neareſt { ♈ add / ♎ ſubſt. } 23 d. 30′ { to / from } the 1ſt Angle, and you have the 2d Angle.

4 *To the Complement Arithmetical of the Co-ſine of the firſt Angle, and the Co-ſine of the ſecond Angle add the Co-tangent of the Oblique Aſcenſion of the houſe, and the ſumm is the Co-tangent of an Arch.*

Which When the ſecond Angle is { leſs then 90 d. / more then 90 d. } is the diſtance in the Ecliptique from the { ſame / other } Æquinoctial point you accounted the Ob. Aſc. from.

Secondly, *The other way to finde the Cuſps of the houſes is this: Having the Right Aſcenſion of the M. C. the Cuſp of the 10th may be thus had, ſubſtract the Co-ſine of 23 d. 30′ from the Tangent of the Mid-Heavens, Right Aſcenſion, and Radius, and there will remain the Tangent of the Cuſp of the 10th houſe as before. But for the Cuſps of the other houſes, having before found the Oblique Aſcenſions and the Poles of the houſes, work thus, viz.*

1 *Take*

1. *Take the Complement of the Poles of each of the houſes to* 90 d. *and to this Number, both add, and ſubſtract* 23 d. 30′. *ſo ſhall you have the ſumm and difference belonging to the Pole of each houſe, Reſerve half their ſumms and half theſe differences as alſo half the Oblique Aſcenſions of each houſe, and then proceed after this method.*

2. *If your Oblique Aſcenſion be under* 180 deg. *take the half of it, and ſay, as the Sine of the half difference Comp. Arith. is to the Sine of the half ſumm, ſo is the Tangent of the Semi-Oblique Aſcenſion, to the Tangent of half the difference in the Ecliptique.*

Again, As the Co-ſine of this half difference Comp. Arith. is to the Co-ſine of the half ſumm. So the Tangent of half the Oblique Aſcenſion to the Tangent of another Arch: Which added to the former Arch, gives the Cuſp of the houſe from the next Equinoxial point. ♈ *becauſe the Oblique Aſcenſion is under* 180 d. *But when the Oblique Aſcenſion is above* 180 d. *then the ſumm of the* 2 *Arches added, muſt be accounted beyond* ♎ *for the Cuſp of the houſe deſired.*

3. *If the Oblique Aſcenſion be above* 180 d. *Subſtract* 180 d. *from it, and take half the Remainer, and now ſay, as the Sine of the half Summ Comp. Arith, is to the Sine of the half difference, &c.*

Again for the ſecond operation, ſay, as the co-ſine of the half ſumm Comp. Arith to the co-ſine of the half Difference, &c. In all reſpects as before, and from the work may be drawn a brief Table of houſes for that

Lati-

Latitude, which shall be made more plain and evident when I come to Examples.

Now that this frequent Operation in Directing might seem the easier, 'twill be necessary, first of all (before you use your Canon of Sines and Tangents) to set down such notes as these, in a Scheam, that so you may not be hindred with them in the work.

Suppose a Star or Planet in ♈ 8 d. 0′ *Lat.* S. 0 d. 31′ *in the Latitude* 52 d. 25′

♈ Sine *Longitude* 8 d. 0′		9143555
Co-tangent Lat. S. 89 9		11828672
Tang. 1 Arch 83 d. 55′		10972227
Add 23 30		
Second Arch 107 25 (*vel* 72 d. 35′) *viz* C. to 180 d.		
Sine of the Lat. 0 d. 51′		8171280
Co-sine of the 1 Arch *Comp. Arith.* 6 d. 5′		0974797
Co-sine of the 1 Arch 72 d. 35′		9476133
Sine of the Declination N. 2 d. 24′		1)8622210
Tang. Lat. 52 d. 25′		10113712
Tang. declin. 2 d. 24′		8621343
Sine *Asc. Differ.* 3 d. 6′		1)8734056

Tang

Tangent Longitude ♈ 8 d. 0′ —— 9147003
Sine 1st Arch Comp Arith. 83 d. 55′ —— 0002453
Sine second Arch 72 d. 35′ —— 9979618

Tangent Right Ascen. 7 d. 40′ —— 1)9129074
Diff. Ascen. Sub. 3 6

Oblique Ascension 4 34

And thus when the Canon is open at the Longitudes set down the Sine and Tangent thereof in his proper place and so for the Latitude and also for the first and second Arches without opening twice for one thing, and this will much facilitate the work, and by a little practice will be as readily performed, as to work by the ordinary Tables.

Note that if a Planets Diurnal motion be above 60′ you are to ad the Logist. Log of the time P. M. given to the Logist, Log, of half the Planets D, M, and their summ will be the Logist, Log, of half the minutes of motion desired, which must be doubled.

Or by Mr. *Streets L L* thus, add the *L. L*, of half the Diurnal motion of the Planet, to the Logist, Log of the whole houres given P, M, and from their summ substract the Log, Log, of 24 h, and there will remain half the minutes required to be doubled as before, onely observe where ever substraction is required by those Logist Logar. you need onely take the Arith. Comp. of the number to be substracted and then add all 3 together, and from their summ abate an Unite next the left hand, and the number comes out the same as if you had used addition and substraction both.

This will not hold in these Log. inserted in this Book, but follow the Rules given before for their use.

CHAP.

CHAPTER IV.

SECTION. I.

Of the ſeveral wayes of Dividing the heavens for the Erection of a Scheam.

1 ACcording to the antient *Aſtrologers* as *Julius Firmius*, &c. Let the Ecliptick be divided into 12 equal parts begining at the *Aſcendent*, as if the *Aſcendent* be 10 *d* of ♈ the ſecond is 10 *d*, of ♉ the third 10 *d*, of ♊ &c. To this relateth that Natural *Aſtrology* publiſhed in *Arcandam*, or *John Indagine*.

2 The ſecond way is according to *Alcabitious*, which is thus, Take the Right Aſcenſion of the 4 Angles *viz*, the 10*th* houſe, Aſcendent 4*th* and 7*th*, let the difference of the Right Aſcenſion of theſe angular points be divided into 3 equal parts and the points in the Ecliptique correſpondent thereunto are the Cuſps of the intermediate houſes.

3 According to *Porphyrius*, let the angular diſtances of the 10*th*, and Aſcendent, &c. be divided into three equal parts in the Ecliptick.

4 But a fourth way is according to *Campanus* and *Gazulus*, Let the Circle of the Eaſt and Weſt be divided into

into 12 equal parts, by lines meeting at the North and South points of the Horizon, as in the Rational way, and as this is the most difficult way, so perhaps may be most approved of by some, at least above the other 3 wayes, and therefore I have inserted this Table following, for the more ready finding the Cusps this way.

Lats.	Ascend.		Houses II VIII		Houses XII VI		Houses III IX		Houses XI V	
	distance		Polares		Distanc		Polars		distance	
	d	′	d	′	d	′	d	′	d	′
50	41	56	41	34	27	43	22	31	20	21
51	42	32	42	18	27	30	22	52	19	58
52	43	09	43	01	27	16	23	18	19	34
53	43	49	43	45	27	02	23	32	19	10
54	44	29	44	28	27	46	23	52	18	45
55	45	11	45	11	26	29	24	11	18	20

The use of this Table.

Having the Right Ascension of the 10th *house to the same add the distance for the* 11th, *and you have the Oblique Ascension of the* 11th *house, to which again add the distance for the* 12th *and you have the Oblique Ascension of the* 12th. *to which add the distance for the Ascendent. and you have it's Oblique Ascension as in the common way, onely instead of* 30 d. *you use these proper distances, and having the Oblique Ascension of the houses against the said distances; you have also the Polar Elevations under which these Oblique Ascensions will give the Cusps of the houses desired.*

Examp

Example.

In the Latitude 51 *d.* Let the Right Aſcenſion of M. C be 307 *d.* 21′ the diſtance in the Table for the 11*th*, 5*th*, 9*th*, and third is 19 *d.* 58′ which being added is 327 *d.* 19′ the Oblique *A*ſcenſion of the 11*th*, and this in the Pole of 22*d*, 52′ will give the Cuſp of the 11*th* houſe 18*d* 10′ ♒, to 327 *d.* 19′ the Obl. Aſcen. of the 11*th* ad 27 *d.* 30′ the diſtance of the 12*th* 8*th* and 6*th*, houſes, and you have 354 *d.* 49′ the Oblique Aſcenſion of the 12*th*, which in the Pole 42 *d*, 18′ will give the Cuſp 20*d.* 40′ ♓ *& ſic in aliis.*

The Table is made thus, viz.

As the Radius to the ſine of 30 *d* and 60 *d.* So the ſine of the *L*atitude, to the ſine of the Polar Numbers.

1 As the ſine Complement of the Polar Numbers, to the coſine of the latitude, ſo the Radius to a 4*th* ſine.

2. As the Radius to the ſine of 30 *d*, and 60 *d*, ſo the 4*th* ſine to the ſine of the diſtance required, as in the foregoing Table:

3. Note that the diſtance for the Aſcendant is the complement of the other 2 diſtances to a Quadrant or 90 Degrees.

Theſe are the ſeveral ways of ſetting a figure of Heaven, according to the antients, But that way which is moſt approved of by all Modern Aſtrologers and generally received, is called the Rational way of *Johannes Regiomontanus* who divides the Æquator into 12 equal parts by 6 great Circles drawn through the Mutual Section of the Horizon and Meridian, whoſe diſtances are acccounted 30 *d.* in the Æquator, the chiefeſt are the Meridian and Horizon which

cut each other at Right Angles and divide the Heavens into 4 quarters, or quadrantals, each quarter being again Sub-divided into 3 equal parts more, and Consequently the whole heavens into 12 divisions called *Houses*, the *Cusps* whereof cut the Zodiack into unequal parts, as by the setting of a figure doth appear.

Note that in all these wayes the the four *Cardinal* houses or angles are the same. My next business shall be to present the Reader with an Example how to erect or set a Scheam *Artificially* by the help of a Canon of Sines and Tangents; This Rational way.

SECTION. II.

How to set a Scheam of Heaven according to the Rational way: and place the planets therein.

HAving before given the proportions how this is to be effected 'twill be necessary here to explain it by an example: Which shall be upon the Nativity of my respected Friend Mr *John Sare Oculist* and *Practicioner in Physick*, and *Chyrurgery*; who was Born near *Canterbury* in the Year 1641 *October* the third at 12 h, 52′ 12″ *P*, *M*, Latitude 51 *d*. 17′.

1 The *Astronomical* time is 3 *October* 12*h*, 52′ 12″ *P*, *M*, Æquation of time for the place of the ☉ is about 6′ *ad*. which makes 12 *h*. 58′ 12″. the difference in Meridians between *Canterbury* and *Paris*, (for which his Ephemeridos was Calculated) is about 9′ add. So the last correction will be 13 *h*. 7′ 12″. unto which time the Planets places are thus Reduced.

Their

Their places at Noon the third and fourth day follows.

Day	☉ in ♎	☽ ♒	♄ ♓	♅ ♒	♂ ♎	♀ ♍	☿ ♎	♌ m
4	21 19	29 55	6 21	3 28	9 48	7 3	10 53	3 17
3	20 20	16 00	6 23	3 25	9 8	6 1	9 15	3 20
D m	0 59	13 55	0 Rx 2	0	3 0 40	1 2	1 38	0 Rx 3

Substract their places the third day, from their places the fourth day (but the contrary where you find a Planet Rx) you will have their diurnal motion, as in the lower most Collume, by a Table of *Logistical Logarithmes*. Reduce them thus

The Logist Log. of { 0d. 59′ ☉'s diur. motion 31950 } add
{ 13h. 7′ ☽. M. —— 6042 }

the nearest is 33′ 37992

So that if the ☉ move 59′ in 24 hours, he goes 33′ in 13 hours 7′ &c. to be added to his place the third day at noon.

Logist. Log. { ☽'s Diurnal motion 13 d. 55′ —— 5450 } add
{ 13 hours 7′ —— 6042 }
7 d 36′ —— 11492

Add this 7 d. 36′ to his place at Noon the third day and you have her true place reduced. After the same manner work for the rest of the *Planets* and their true places will be found thus.

The Planets Long.				The Planets Lat.	
☉	20 53	♎		00 00	} North
☽	21 31	♒		04 52	
♄	6 22	♓	℞	01 52	} South
♆	3 26	♒		00 53	
♂	9 30	♎		00 51	} North
♀	6 32	♍		00 30	
☿	10 9	♎		01 41	

2, For the Right Aſcenſion of the ☉

Tangent of	20 53 ♎	9581528	} *add*
Co-ſine of	23 30	9962398	
Tangent	19 17	1)9543926	
Add	180 00		
R. A. ☉ *is*	199 17		

For the Right Aſcenſion of time 12*h*. 52′ 12″ I repair to the Table that converts degrees into time & *Contra*, and I finde the R. A. of Time thus,

Againſt { 12 *h* / 52′ / 12″ } I finde { 180 *d* 0′ / 013 0 / 000 3 } *add*

R. *Aſcen. of* { Time 193 3 / Sun 199 17 } *add*

392 20

Subſtract 360 00

Remains R. *A. M. C.* 32 20

3 *Having*

3 Having the Right Aſcenſion of the Mid-heaven, and oblique Aſcenſion of other houſes by a continual addition of 30 degrees as in the Margin appears.

Then For the Cuſps of the 10th houſe (according to the Rules before given) work thus.

	d	′
R. A. M. C.	32	20
Add	30	00
Ob. Aſcen, 11th,	62	20
	30	00
Ob, Aſc, 12th,	92	20
add	30	00
Ob, Aſc, Aſcendent	122	20
add	30	00
Ob, Aſcen, 2d,	152	20
add	30	00
Ob, Aſcen, 3d,	182	20

Add the Co-tangent of R, A, M, C, 32 d, 20′ 10198604
To the Coſine of 22 d, 30′ 9962398

Their ſumm is the Co-tang, of 34 d, 36′ ♈ 10161002

That is 4 d, 36′ ♉ for the Cuſp of the M, C,

Or thus,
Add the Radius unto the Tan, of the M, C, R, A 19801396
and from thence ſubſt, the Co-ſine 23 d, 30′ 9962398

The remainer is the Tangent of M C. R, A, 9838998
viz. 4 d, 36′ ♉ or 34 d, 36′ from ♈ as before.

4 Before the Cuſps of the other houſes can be had, you are to finde the elevation of the Pole above the Circles of poſition of the 11th and 2d, 12th and 3d, houſes thus.

For the Pole of the 11*th* and 3d houſes,

Add the Tang, of the Lat, of the place 51*d* 17′	10096027
To the Sine of 30 *d*, alwayes abating Radius	9698970
and it produces the Tangent of 31 *d*, 57′	1)9794997

which is the Pole of the 11*th* and 3*d*. deſired.

For the Pole of the 12*th* and 2*d*,

To the Tangent of the Latitude 51 *d*, 17′	10096027
add the ſine of 60 *d*,	9937531
and it gives you, the Tangent of 47 *d*, 12′	10033558

which is the Elevation of the Pole of the 12*th* and 2*d* houſe

Obſerve the Rule given, and proceed thus to finde the Cuſps of the houſes [*But Note that it will be neceſſary that you ſet down apart, the Co-tangents of the Poles of the houſes out of your Canon, in ſome convenient place, for the more readineſs in operation, becauſe they are often uſed therein. ſo likewiſe at once opening of your Canon you may take out the Co-ſine, and Co-tangent of the Oblique Aſcenſion of your houſe, &c. And this will facilitate the work very much.*]

§ For the Cuſp of the 11*th* houſe, whoſe Obl. Aſcen is 62 *d*, 20′

Operation I

add the Coſine of Ob, *Aſ*, of the 11th 62*d*, 20′	9666824	
to the Co-tan of the Pole of the houſe 31 57	0205054	
and it produces the Co-t. of the 1ſt angl	53 20	9871878
Now becauſe the Ob, *Aſ*, is next ♈ add	23 30	
and you have the ſecond angle	76 50	

Operation

Operation 2.

Add the Arith Comp. of the Cosine of the first angle	53 *d*,	20′	0223910
and the Cosine of the second angle	76	50	9357524
To the Co-t. of Ob, Asc, of the house	62	20	9719555
Which produces the Co-t, of an Arch	78	42	9300989

Which because the second angle is less then 60 *d*, is the distance in the Ecliptick from the same Equinoctial point the Oblique Ascension was accounted from, *viz.* ♈ and 78 *d*, 42′ from ♈ (you may see by a little Table placed before the *Logistical Logarithmes*, for that purpose) fall in 18 *d*. 42′ ♊. Observe this method in the rest.

---

6 *For the Cusp of the* 12*th house whose Ascension is* 92 *d*. 20′ *the Comp. to* 180 *is* 87 *d*. 40′

Operation 1

Cosine Obl, Ascen,	87 *d*,	40′	8609734 ad
Co-tang, of the pole of the house	47	12	9966616
Co-tangent of the first angle	87	50	8576350

	d,	′
From this first angle	87	50
The Obl. Asc, being above 90 *d*, and nearest ♎ I must therefore Substract	23	30
Remains for the second angle	64	20

Operation 2.

Co-fine of the 1ſt angle 87 *d*, 50′,	Co Ar,	1422434	add
Co-fine of the ſecond angle 64 *d*, 20′		9636623	add
Co-tangent of the Obl, *Aſc.* 87 *d*, 40′		8610094	add
Co-tangent of 64 *d*, 59′ diſt. from, ♎		9669151	

Subſtract 64 *d*, 59′ from 180 *d*, remains 115 *d*, 1′ *viz*, 25 *d*, 1′ ♋.

---

7. *For the Cuſp of the Aſcendent, whoſe Obl. Aſcen,* is 122 d. 20′ *Complement to* 180 d, *is* 57 d, 40′

Operation 1.

	d,	′		
Co-fine of the Ob, *Aſc*, *Aſcendent*	57	4	9728227	add
Co-tang, of the Pole of the Aſcen,	51	17	9903973	add
Cotangent of the firſt angle	66	48	9632200	
Subſtract	23	30		
Remains the ſecond angle	43	18		

Operation 2.

	d	′		
Coſine of the 1 angle	66	48	Co, *Ar*,	0404568 add
Coſine of the 2 angle	43	53		9861996 add
Co-tan of the *Ob*, *Aſc*	57	40		9810396
Co-tan of the diſt of the diſt	40	32		10067960

Which 40 *d* 32′ Subſtracted from 180 *d* leaves 139 *d*, 28′ from ♈ *viz* 19 *d*. 28′ ♌ for the *Cuſp* of the *Aſcendent*,

---

8 *For*

8 *For the cuſp of the ſecond houſe whoſe Obl, Aſcen, is* 152 *d*, 20′ *Comp, to* 180 *d, is* 27 *d*, 40′.

Operation 1

		d	′		
Co-ſine Oblique *Aſcenſion*		27	40	9947269	ad
Co-tan, of the Pole of the houſe		47	12	9966616	
Co-tangent of the firſt angle		50	39	9913885	
	Subſtract	23	30		*the obliquity of the Ecliptick*
Remains the ſecond angle		27	09		

Operation 2

			d	′		
Coſine of the	1 angle		50	39	Co, *Aſi*, 0197873	ad
	2 angle		27	9	9949300	
Co-tan. of the	Ob, *Aſcen.*		27	40	0280445	
	of the diſt,		20	29	10427618	

This 20 *d*, 29′ Subſtracted from 180 *d*, leaves 159 *d*, 31′ *ab* ♈ that is ♍ 9 *d*. 31′ for the Cuſp of the ſecond houſe.

---

9 *Laſtly, For to obtain the Cuſp of the third houſe whoſe Oblique Aſcenſion is* 182 *d*, 20′. *Reject* 180 *and uſe the Exceſs,*

Operation 1

			d	′		
Co-ſine of the Obl, *Aſcen.*			2 *d*,	20′	9999640	ad
Co-tan, of the	pole of the houſe		31	57	0205054	
	firſt angle		31	58	10204694	
	Subſtract		23	30		
Remains			08	28	*the 2d angle,*	

Operatio

Operation 2

Cosine	1 angle	31	58	Co, *Arith*,	0071422	ad
	2 angle	08	28		9995241	
Co-tan	Obl. *Asc.*	2	20		1389906	
	distance	2	0		11456569	

So the Cusps of the third is 2 *d*, 0′ ♎. The other six houses have the opposit Signes and degrees as hath been already shewed: the seconds are here omitted for the more ease Calculation.

Here follows a Synopsis *of the whole Calculation.*



For the part of Fortune.

		S	D	′	
The	☽	10	21	31	
	☉	6	20	53	Subtract
		4	00	38	
Asten. add		4	19	28	
	⊕	8	20	06	♐

SECTION III.

How to ſet a Figure a different way from the former, by a Canon of Sines and Tangents.

THere is yet another way of ſetting a figure by Trigonometrical Analogy, *before mentioned in this Book that ſome may better fancy to work by. and therefore I ſhall give a Brief Example or two for variety ſake.*

How to operate for the Cuſp of the 10th is ſhewed 2 wayes already; but take an Example for the Cuſp of the 11th houſe this way whoſe Pole is 31 d, 57′ the Complement thereof to 90 d, or a Quadrant is 58 d 3′ add 23 d 30′ (the Greateſt Obliquity of the Ecliptique) and the ſumm is 81 d, 33′ the difference 34 d. 33′, the half ſumm is 40 d 46′ 30″ the half difference 17 d, 16′ 30″ the Oblique Aſcenſion of the 11th 62 d 2′.

Becauſe the Oblique Aſcenſion is under 180 d, I take half and work thus [according to the Rule given.]

Operation 1

Sine ½	Differ. 17 d 16′ and ½ Co, *Ar*	0527305	ad
	Summ 40 d, 46′ 30″	9814973	
Tangent of ½ the Obl. Aſcen.	31 d. 10′	9781631	
Tangent of 53 d. 4′		10123909	

Operation 2

Coſin of the ½	Differ. 17 d, 16 30″ Co, *Ar*.	0020046	ad
	Summ 40 d 46′ 30″	9879257	
Tangent of ½ th: Obl, Aſc,	31 10	9781631	
25 d 57′		9680934	

Laſtly

Lastly add these 2 Tangents toge ther thus $\left\{\begin{matrix}53 & 4\\ 25 & 37\end{matrix}\right\}$ *add*

and it gives 78 d. 41′ from ♈, *because the Ob, Ascen. was less then 180.* 78 41

that is 18 d, 41′ ♎ *within a minute as before, and this small difference is occasioned by reason of the omission of Seconds in operation, a thing not much considerable in in this work.*

Again for the Cusp of the second house whose Pole is 47 d 12′ Complement to 90 d, is 42 d, 48′, add 23 d, 30′ the summ will amount to 66 d, 18′ substract 23 d, 30′ and you have the Difference 19 d, 18′. The half summ is 33 d. 9′, the half difference is 9 d, 39′ the Oblique Ascension is 152 d, 20′ half of it is 76 d 10′.

Tangent of ½	The Sine of the half	difference	9 d.	39′	Co, Ar 0775651	ad
		Summ	33	9	9737855	
		Oblique Ascen.	76	10	0608640	
		the distance	85	41	11122146	

Operation 2

The Cotange of the half	The Cosine of the half	difference	9 d	39′	Co, Ar, 0006189	ad
		Summ	33	9	9922851	
		Ob^l, Ascen.	76 d,	10′	0608640	
		the distance	73	50	10537680	

Add these two Tangents together $\left\{\begin{matrix}85 & 41\\ 73 & 50\end{matrix}\right\}$ adde

Gives the distance of the Cusp, 159 31 from ♈, *viz.* 9 *d*, 30′ ♍ as before.

Note

Note that from the work a general Table of houſes may be made for that Latitude, onely by Addition of the two uppermoſt ſummes in each Operation, to be uſed by an addition of the Tangent of half the Oblique Aſcen. of each houſe twice, as appears plainly by the ſeveral operations.

Example

By the addition of thoſe Summs

I finde the 11*th and* 3*d houſes next.*

♈	0342278	♈	9899303
♎	9657722	♎	0100697

The 12*th and* 2*d houſes next*

♈	0513506	♈	9929040
♎	9486494	♎	0070960

Do ſo for the Aſcendent alſo, having the ſumm and difference as before directed. —— *Thus Thoſe numbers you ſee againſt* ♈ *are made by adding the Arithmetical Complement of the ſine of the half Difference to the ſine of the half ſumm of thoſe againſt* ♎ *are the Arithmetical Complement of thoſe very Numbers againſt* ♈, *and may be made by adding the Arith. Comp. of the ſine of the half ſumm &c. Then by adding the Semi Oblique Aſcenſion of each houſe twice to theſe proportional numbers, as if under* 180 *d. to thoſe againſt* ♈ *if above to thoſe againſt* ♎ *you have two Tangents the Summ of which gives the diſtance of the Cuſp of the houſe from that Æquinoctial point as appears by the Operation better then many words.*

After this manner thoſe that liſt may Operate for the reſt of the houſes, theſe two Examples being Sufficient to enlighten the underſtanding in the work; only note, that if the Oblique aſcenſion be above 180*d. you are to caſt away* 180 *d, and work with half the remainer, adding*

then

then the Arithmetical Complement of the Sine of the half ſumm in the firſt place to the Sine of the half difference, and Tangent of the Semi *Oblique Aſcenſion in the firſt Operation. And in the ſecond Arith. Comp of the Co-ſine of the half ſumm to the Co-ſine of the half difference and Tangent of the* Semi *Oblique Aſcenſion as is before plain enough Expreſt.*

Thoſe that deſire to ſee the demonſtrations out of the Sphear may peruſe Mr. Wings *Ephem. 2d. part, with his* Aſtrono. Inſtaurata *where they may ſee it laid down two wayes* in plano, *the one projection being preſt into the Horizon (which is the beſt way) the other into the Meridian according to the old way. The like you may ſee in* Durrets Ephemerides, *and in Mr.* Newtons Aſtro Brit. *Alſo the Demonſtration of a direction, Circles of Poſition, and all other Aſtronomical proportions the which could not conveniently be Inſerted, neither is it abſolutely neceſſary in this ſmall piece.*

CHAPTER V.

SECTION. I.

Neceſſary Conſiderations before Judgement upon a Nativity.

1 CONſider the ſtrength or weakneſs of the Planets in general, and ſee how they behold each other, and

in

in particular whether they caſt any benevolent Aſpect to the Aſcendent, Lord thereof or the ☉ or ☽.

2 See whether the Luminaries behold the *Aſcendent* friendly, alſo in what houſes and quarter of Heaven they and the reſt of the Planets with ♁ are poſited.

3 Take no ice what eminent fixed Stars of the firſt or ſecond magnitude (that have but ſmall Latitude to or from the Ecliptick) fall in any of the angles, or near unto the chief ſignificators in the Figure; Conſider the nature of theſe fixed Stars, if ſo be they agree (in nature) with thoſe Planets they are nearly joyned with, this doth augment their ſignification be it good or bad; But if thoſe Stars happen to be of contrary nature, judge the contrary.

4 *Conſider* alſo in what houſes, or parts of the *Antiſcions* or Contra-antiſcions of all the Planets fall, whether upon the *Cuſps* or the chief houſes thereof, or near the degrees of any of the *Planets* places, or fixed Stars therein, and accordingly order your Judgement.

5 From theſe (and ſuch like) conſiderations you may be able Rationally to Judge, and Determine (in a general way) what the *Natives* Fate may be; Having alſo reſpect to the Directions that fall in the *Nativity* both good and bad, for the effects of both, all degrees of Perſons muſt (undoubtedly) be ſure, more or leſs to partake of during the time of their Operations, although it ſo happens that in ſome Nativities the good Directions do much ſurmount the bad, and in others the contrary.

If we are content with the effects of good Directions, we muſt of neceſſity beare with the force of bad alſo, becauſe Squares and Oppoſitions muſt have their operations as well as Sextiles and Trines, for without the one, the

other

other cannot be; and therefore ſome Sower as well as well as Sweet will attend all Perſons. Hence then I may conclude, that the fore-knowledge of theſe events is very cocvenient, that thereby we may put our ſelves in a capacity to receive all promiſed good, if we cannot withſtand approaching dangers, yet we may be able in part to mittigate their force, and thereby the more eaſily evade. Now the particular times when either of theſe things may happen is Artificially pointed out by the Art of Directions.

6 Laſtly in judging any thing concerning the Native, whether Life, Eſtate, Marriage, Preferment, Travail, &c. The Artiſt ought rightly to underſtand (and be exceeding perfect in) the nature and ſignifications of the Significators and Promitters, alſo their Fortitude or Debility, and how they are beheld, either by good or bad Aſpects of the other Planets and thereby aſſiſted or afflicted, I ſay without ſuch conſiderations an Artiſt cannot well judge (or thereby inform the Native) of his future Fate, and what may probably happen unto him in the whole courſe of his Life according to Natural Cauſes.

SECTION II.

Of the general ſignifications of the Lord of the hour in a Nativity.

1 THat perſon which is born in the hour of ♄ ſhall more or leſs in condition participate of his nature, viz. He will be a cloſe ſubtle Perſon, altogether aimin

at his own Interest, high minded, self conceited, sufficiently Churlish, and of a dogged disposition, Timerous, a Contemner of Women (as to marriage) yet Luxurious, and many times addicted to Swear, Lye, and dissemble, and not altogether a stranger to Drunkenness. But if ☿ be well seated in the Nativity, those evil inclinations will be much abated and the native proves a man of a profound Judgment, few words, very studious, Grave and Severe, and one that heaps up the goods of this Life.

2 Such as are born in the hour of ♃ prove Vertuous Persons in the general, they will be Just and Honest in all their dealings, and actions, Wise and Prudent, Liberal to those that stand in need, having a desire to benefit all persons, and perfect haters of all unworthy Acts.

But if ♃ be ill disposed in the Nativity the Native then proves a very Extravagant person, Ignorant, Careless, and in fine but of a dull capacity, a fawning dissembling companion, and not fit to be trusted.

3 Those that are born in the hour of ♂ will be inclinable to all manner of Rash Actions, and generally subject to any kinde of Mischief, as Quarrelling, Fighting, Swearing, Lying, Stealing, Killing, &c.

But if ♂ be well seated in the Figure, the Natives Inclinations are not altogether so bad; Yet if Authors may be credited, bad is the best. for they usually prove Perjured, Turbulent, Treacherous persons, &c. — Proud, Boasters, &c.

4 Such as are born in the hour of the ☉ shall aime at high things, having a desire of Soveraignty, generally Lofty Spirits, Proud and High, but of excellent sound Judgements, Lovers of Honour and all honourable actions, searchers into many rare secrets, and usually not without success.

But if the ☉ be weak in the Nativity or much afflicted the

the Natives inclinations are not all so commendable, but much of this good signification is abated, as before hinted in the other Planets.

5 Those persons that are born in the hour of ♀ (and she well dignified in the nativity) will be inclinable (for the most part) to mirth, and in general they are Vertuous persons, delighting much in taking their pleasure, and to go Spruce, and Neat in their Apparrel, often Insnared in Love matters, Constant in their Affections, free from Jealouse, &c.

But note that if ♀ happen to be ill dignified in the Geniture, then the Native is usually inclinable to Pleasures of the worser sort, as Drunkennes, Wenching, and such like sordid Actions, not fit to be (so much as) mentioned.

6 Such as are born in the hour of ☿ (and ☿ in the Nativity be free from affliction and Strong) are usually great Searchers into many Curiosities, such persons generally have most excellent witts, sharp Fancies, Inclinable to all kind of Learning, Eloquent, good Orators and in short capable of understanding the most occult Mysteries belonging to any Science without much instruction.

If ☿ be ill disposed, this good signification is much abated, and then the Native proves a mear verbal person, a great Boaster pretending to much knowledge, and guilty of very little, if any at all, and many times too much addicted to Lying, Cheating, Pilfering, and such like vicious and dishoneſt Actions.

7 Lastly Those persons Born in the hour of the ☽ are usually Unstedfast, and Wavering, Timerous, Delighting to be wandring and shifting from place to place, but (for the most part) they are Ingenious, Lovers of

all kind of Novelties, and such as are willing to live at peace.

But if the ☽ be weake in the Nativity, and much debilitated, or afflicted, this argues the Native to be but a loose kinde of person, and a meer Sottish, Idle, Lazy Creature, having no spirit, but doth (as it were) delight to be Careles of himself, and to live in a Poor, Low, Mean, and Beggarly condition.

Note that what is spoken here of the Lord of the hour in a Nativity, may also be understood of the *Lord of the Geniture*, which is that Planet that hath most Essential and Accidental Dignities in the Figure of the Geniture. But if any other Planet therein should happen to be neerly as strong as he, or if another Planet (or Planets) should behold him, or that Planet which is Lord of the hour, in this case the artist is to mix his Judgement according to their several Significators, and from thence Judge the Qualities and Conditions of the Native.

SECTION III.

Of the faces of the Signes being Horoscopial in any Geniture.

THe Faces of the Signes are accounted by some very necessary in *Astrological* Judgements, and have been often verified in many Nativities. For which *John Angelus* hath described convenient Images that very well expresse their several significations, which are briefly thus, *viz.*

1 *If*

1 *If the first face of* ♈ *Ascend, the Native will be a Person of an Undaunted Spirit, Confident and Bold, Courageous and Valiant.*

The second Face signifies the Native will be preferred, and come to bear Rule.

The third Face declares the Native to be Acute, addicted to Musick, and to Mirth, and to Pleasures in general.

2 *If the first Face of* ♉ *Ascend, the Native will be skilful in Husbandry, and inclinable to study several things Mathematical, as Geometry, Surveying, &c.*

The second Face shews the Native shall have great Power, but Instrumental in the Ruin of Places, and impoverishing the Inhabitants thereof.

The third Face denotes the Native shall be much afflicted by hard Labour, Want and Misery, as also suffer Bondage and Slavery, unless the Fortunes interpose their friendly Rayes.

3 *The first Face of* ♊ *Ascending, intimates the Native may prove a Scrivener or an Accompant, or one imployed about Receiving and Paying Money, it also declares many other Imployments wherein the wit is much excercized, and small Profit arising thereby.*

The second Face declares much affliction to the Native by hard Labour and Oppression, obtaining nothing without much study and difficulty, and in fine it denotes but a kind of a knavish Wit, Subtle and Cunning, but little bettered thereby.

The third Face signifies the Native will be subject to many foolish Pleasures of the worser sort, having a dull Wit, very Forgetful, yet subject to Fearing and Deriding of others, to his own shame and Disgrace.

4 *The first Face of* ♋ *Ariseing, denotes the Native will be much concerned amongst the Femal Sex, and take much delight in such kind of pleasures, it signifies Riches to the Native, and that he will prove a Subtle Person, easily procuring the favour of such as he desires.*

The second Face signifies a pleasant Life, and that the Native shall enjoy the Riches of this world, much given to the Dalliance of Women. But if a Woman she will be Fruitful and know no want.

The third Face declares the Native will delight in Hunting, and several Martial Exercizes and Actions subject to Quarrels and Contentions, and to heap Riches thereby.

5 *If the first Face of* ♌ *be Horoscopial, the Native will be Bold and Cruel, Lustful, and subject to Act many evil deeds without other things happen to mitigate it, and in fine the Native must of necessity run through many unavoidable hardships and dangers.*

The second Face signifies many unexpected Contentions, Miseries, and Necessities, yet Victory over others, and much concerned in the occasioning of Quarrels, Fightings, and Discord, many times Bloud shed.

The third Face is said to signifie a Peaceable person, and one that will endeavour to shun and avoid all means of Strife and Debate.

6 *The first Face of* ♍ *Ariseing signifies the Native shall be very fortunate in all things relating to the Earth, as Plowing, Sowing, Planting, &c And by such means gain much Wealth, and heap together the goods of this life.*

The second Face shews the Native shall be exceeding Covetous and Greedy after Riches, desiring the help and assistance of others to advance himself.

The

The third Face of ♒ Intimates the Native may live to an old Age, and be full of Infirmities and Weaknesses, many times the Native loses a Member, and in his life Roots and Demollishes what others have planted beforehim.

7 The first Face of ♎ Ascending Intimates the Native may come to be a Judge or Magistrate that will do Justice, and help the poor against their powerful Oppressours.

The second Face signifies the Native shall live a Peaceable life and enjoy much Content and Plenty.

The third Face denotes the Native to be a Gluttonous Rioting person, much addicted to bad Company, Lust and Follity.

8 The first Face of ♏ Horoscopial signifies the Native to be Contentious, Quarrelsome, Deceitful and Treacherous.

The second Face signifies a Sower of Sedition, a Person Exceeding high Spirited, and one that generally delights in Mischief.

The third Face denotes the Native will not only be Froward, Peevish and Quarrelsome, but it signifies he shall prove a Drunkard, a Fornicator, and a person sufficiently puffe up with Pride.

9 The first Face of ♐ Arising, signifies the Native shall be of a Bold Undaunted Spirit in all Warlike Actions,

The second Face prenotes the Native to be subject to many Scarrs, and that he will sustain many Bodily Sorrows and Afflictions.

The third Face denotes the Native to be a Wilful, Obstinate and Selfish person, a ready Wit for Mischief, but very averse to good Actions, and delights to be threatning and Crossing all he converseth withal.

10. *If the first face of ♈ ascend, it denotes the Native shall travel much, and both gain and lose thereby; so that his life shall not be very fortunate or unfortunate, but intermixt with both.*

The second Face signifies the Native shall be very Inquisitive and search after such things that (Notwithstanding his great pains and study) he shall not find out or attain unto.

The third face prenotes the Native will be exceeding Covetous, and have an itching desire after Soverainty, as well as the wealth of this world.

11 *If the first Face of ♒ Arise in the Horoscope (or Ascendent) of a Nativity, the Native is extreamly Concerned in heaping together the wealth of the World, and in Continual trouble of Spirit by reason thereof, yet notwithstanding all his Pains and Toyl, he rarely attains to be Rich, but still as it comes it passeth away again, to the great perplexity of the Natives minde.*

The second Face signifies the Native to be of a Covetous disposition, but of a good Understanding, a Comly person, and one that loves his Liberty.

The third Face denotes the Native to be of a froward Disposition, he will be subject to be hated without a cause, many will be ready to affront and abuse him, and he not much behindehand with them (when Occasion is offered) but forward enough to Callumniate their good Names and Reputations.

12 *The first Face of ♓ Ascending, denotes the Native to be mutable in his thoughts, often shifting from place to place, using much dilligence to make himself known, and get himself a name and estate, but rarely accomplishing his desires.*

The second Face signifies the Native to of be an Aspiring Brain, and one that aims at very high things.

The

The third Face prenotes the Native to be a great lover of (and one that delights much in) unlawful Pleasures amongst Woman, yet a Peaceable Quiet person.

[These are general Significations, and reputed by some to be very significant, however 'twill be convenient that the Artist in his Judgement consider the Planet (or Planets) in the Ascendent, (or beholding it) and signe they are in, and what other Configurations he findes that may in any kind alter these General Significations ; and in so doing he will be the better enabled to Judge the Natural Inclination and general Fate of the Native.]

CHAPTER. VI.

How to give an Astrological Judgement upon the twelve Houses of a Nativity, with the resolution of the most necessary Questions appertaining thereunto. Exemplified for Practice, from the foregoing Geniture.

SECTION I.

Judgements proper to the first House,

May the Life of the Native be Long or Short ?

LEast an Artist take much pains to small purpose, 'twill be convenient, (before he proceed to directions) to con-

consider whether the Native be likely to live long or not, therefore if it be possible to procure the Parents Nativity, Consider therein the strength or weakness of the significators of Children, *viz.* See if the 5th House or the Lord there of be not afflicted by the presence or malevolent Aspect of ♄ or ♂ or ☋ posited therein; If you finde the Significator ill placed or Infortunate by the aforesaid Aspects, or Combust of the ☉, or Retrograde, &c. These are Arguments their Children are not long Lived, but subject to diseases, and consequently short Life, Judge the contrary if you finde the Significators Strong and Potent; But if the Parents Nativity cannot be had (as for the most part they are very rarely obtained) then Judge from the Natives Geniture according to these following Rules, which are termed (almost) Infallible and have been often proved in divers Nativities.

1 Consider whether the Degree Ascending or the Lord therof be afflicted or not, by the *Presence* or Aspect of the Infortunes, or Lord of the *8th*, or whether the Lord of the Ascendent be Combust, Perigrine, Retrograde, or Cadent.

2 ♄ or ♂ in ♂ in the Ascendent, or in ☍ from the first and *7th*, or an Eclips happening in the Degree Ascending, or fixed Stars of an evil Nature Arising therewith.

3 The Light of the time Afflicted or Eclipsed at the hour of Birth.

4 The ☽ in □ or ☍ of ♄ or ♂, in the *4th 6th 8th* or *12th* Houses, or if she be besieged of ♄ and ♂, or of ☉ and ♂ and in no good Aspect of the Fortunes.

Lastly,

5 Lastly, Many Planets in the 6th, 8th, or 12th, and the Lord of the Ascendent not beholding them, or the ☉ or ☽ or Ascendent with any good Aspect.

These are the most Considerable Testimonies of a short life, but if none of these take place in the Geniture, but the Fortunes or Luminaries friendly behold the Ascendent, or his Lord, the Native may then (in all probability) live until some powerful Direction of the Ascendent or Luminaries to an evil promittor, cut him (or her) off from the Land of the Living.

As for Example.

1 In the Geniture I finde none of the former Rules take place in the Ascendent, the ☉ and ☽ in △, and both beholding the Ascendent, the ☉ (being Lord thereof) by a ✶, and the ☽ by an ☌.

2 The Ascendent and Luminaries are not afflicted by the Infortunes or Lords of the 8th, or 4th, but the ☉ is in ☌ of *Spica Virginis*, a Star of a Benevolent nature, *Ergo*. The Native is not short lived, but may live to a considerable Age, as already he hath done.

[*Note that* ♂ *Lord of the* 4th *is above* 11 *degrees distant from the* ☌ *of the* ☉ *Lord of the Ascendent, and cannot be said to afflict the* ☉, *and the rather because* ☿ *is intercepted between both, and more immediately receives the Malice of* ♂, *being so closely joyned unto him.*]

§ 1.

Of the Significator (or giver) of Life, called Hylech, Hyleg, *or* Apheta.

There hath been some difference amongst Authors

thoes in this particular, *viz*, What planet to take for the giver of Life, But waving all their Arguments and several oppinions herein, I shall assent to those which affirm that the giver of Life ought to be elected from the Luminaries and the *Ascendent*, and the strongest of them ought to be chosen, [*This seemes Rational, and therefore ought to be imbraced, and I suppose there are few (or none) of our Modern Astrologers but will acknowledge the same*] which take in these 3 following Rules.

1 If the Birth be Diurnal and the ☉ in the *7th*, *9th*, *10th* *11th*, or *Ascendent*, (or not far from the Degrees thereof) these being accounted the onely *Aphetical* places proper unto him, he shall then be accounted for *Hyleg* or giver of Life.

2 If the Birth be Nocturnal, and the ☽ posited in the *Ascendent* or any of the aforesaid Houses (or near the Degrees of the Cusps thereof) she shall then be accepted for the giver of Life.

3 Lastly, If in a Diurnal or Nocturnal Nativity, the Luminaries are not found in those *Aphetical* places, but Located in any of the other houses, in this Case the *Ascendent* must be taken for *Hyleg* or giver of Life.

As in the proposed Geniture which was Nocturnal I finde the ☽ posited in the 7th house, and therefore she must be taken for *Hyleg*, according to the second Rule given.

---

§ 2.

Of the giver of Years, or Alchocoden (as the Arabians *terme it*)

---

1 See what Planet hath most Essential Dignities in the

place

place of the *Hyleg*, and that Planet (by the Antients) is termed *Alcocoden* or Giver of Years, and this the rather if he be in *Aspect* to the place of the Giver of Life.

2 If either of the Luminaries happen to be *Hyleg*, or Giver of Life; and are also strong and potent: as being in their own Houses or Exaltations, &c. Then account that Luminary so Dignified both *Hyleg* and *Alchocoden*, but being *Hyleg*, and void of the aforesaid qualifications, *Viz.* Essentially strong, they cannot then be admitted Giver of Years.

3 If many Planets happen to be near equal in strength in the place of the giver of Life, so that the Artist may be at a stand which to take; then consider which of them behold the *Hyleg* by a friendly *Aspect*, and take him to be the true Giver of Years. Alwayes observing that an Oriental Planet, if the Birth be by Day is preferred before an Occidental.

4 The use of the *Alchocoden* is briefly thus, if you finde him Strong and Angular in his own Dignities, it intimates the Native may live the Old Years that Planet signifies, if in a Succedent House, his Meane Yeares (here the eighth house is Excepted) if in a Cadent House, his Least Yeares, this is according to the Doctrine of the *Arabians*.

	Old Years	mean Years	Least Years
♄	57	43	30
♃	70	45	12
♂	66	40	15
☉	120	69	19
♀	82	45	8
☿	76	48	20
☽	108	66	25

Example

Example

In the proposed Geniture the ☽ (being *Hyleg*) is posited in ♒, now I finde ♄ hath most Dignities in that Signe, *Viz.* House, Triplicity, and Term; therefore according to the first rule he must be accepted for the *Alcocoden*, and although he behold not the ☽ yet he disposes of her in his house, and therefore the rather to be taken, &c.

[*Note that the* ☽ *is in her own Face (a very small Dignity) but not in her hour or Exaltation, therefore in this case to be rejected (according to the second Rule) and onely* ♄ *must be accounted the Giver of Years because no other Planet can claim so great a priority in* ♒ *as himself,*] and being posited in an Angle (in a Signe of his own nature) intimates the Native may probably live his Old Years, *viz.* 57 according to the 4*th* Rule.

---

§. 3.

Of the Lord of the Geniture, or Almuten *of the Nativity.*

---

1 Some *Astrologers* (in former *Ages*) took this way of finding the Lord of the Geniture, *Viz.* Diligently to enquire what Planet had most Essential Dignitys in the place of the ☽ and ☿ and that very Planet they took to be Lord of the Geniture, because ☿ signifies the Spirit and the ☽ the Body.

2 But it is now generally received (amongst modern Artists) to be that Planet which hath most Accidental and Essential Dignities in the Scheam of Birth, and the Natives

tives Dispositions and Inclinations (for the most part) concur with the nature of that very Planet which is strongest in the Figure. [*The natures and several significations of the Planets (well Dignified or otherwise) you may read in the first part hereof*, Chap. 2. Sect. 3, &c.]

3 The manner of finding the Lord of the Geniture, is performed thus *viz.* Collect into a Table all the Planets Essential and Accidental Dignities and Debilities by the Tables for that purpose *pag.* 30 and 35 the first part and by substraction of the lesser number from the greater you will easily see the strength or weakness of each Planet, and lastly discover, the Planet that surmounts all the rest in Essential Fortitudes, and therefore Lord of the Geniture, with this provisor, that if 2 Planets have equal strength in your Figure, you are to accept him for the *Almuten* who hath most Essential Dignities in the Horoscope, and this the rather if he friendly behold it or the Lord thereof, or either of the Lights.

Because the Essential Dignities and Debilities of the Planets were casually ommited *page* 35 in the first part, I thought good (and not altogether out of their proper places) here to Insert them.

Essential Dignities

A Planet in his own house or Reception by house shall have Dignities		5
In	Exaltation	4
	Triplicity	3
	Term	2
	Face	1

Essen-

Essential Debilities,

A Planet in his Detriment shall have Debilities } 5

In his { Fall 4
Peregrin 5

In the proposed Geniture, I Collect the Fortitudes and Debilities of the Planets according to the former direction *Rule* 3. and they present themselves thus, *viz.*

Fortitudes and Debilities } of ♄

Fortit. ♄ { Reception of ☿ by house 5
in the 7th house 4
not Combust 5

Dignities 14

Debilit. ♄ { Retrograde 5
Occidental 2
Peregrine 5

Debilities 12

Hence I finde By Substracting the Debilities from the Dignities of ♄ he is strong by 2 Testimonies,

Fort

Fortitudes and Debilities } of ♃

Dign. of ♃ {
- In Recep of ☿ by house 5
- free from Combustion 5
- Direct in Motion 4

Dignities 14

Debil. of ♃ {
- Slow in Motion 2
- In the 6th house 2
- Occidental of ☉ 2
- Peregrine 5

Debilities 11

Hence it appears ♃ hath onely 3 Testimonies of streng

Fortitudes and Debilities } of ♂

Dign. of ♂ {
- In the 3d house 1
- Not Combust 5
- Swift in Motion 2
- Direct in Motion 4
- Oriental of the ☉ 2

Dignities 14

Debil of ♂ {
- In his detriment 5
- Peregrine 5

Debilities 10

Hence ♂ appears to be strong by 4 Testimonies

Fortitudes and Debilities } of ☉

Dign. of ☉ { In the third house 1
Slow in Motion 2

Dignities 3

Debilit. of ☉ { In his fall 4
Peregrine 5

Debilities 9

Hence the ☉ is weak by 6 Testimonies.

Fortitudes and Debilities } of ♀

Dign. of ♀ { In the Ascendent 5
Swift in Motion 2
Free from Combust. 5
In Recept. of ♀ by house 5
Direct 4

Dignities 21

Debilit. of ♀ { In Detriment 5
In ☌ of ♄ 3
Oriental of ☉ 2

Debilities 11

Hence ♀ is strong by 10 Testimonies.

Dignities and Debilities } of ☿

Dign. of ☿	In the third house	1
	In Recept. of ♀ by house	5
	Free from [illegible]bustion	5
	Swift in M[illegible]on	2
	Direct in Mo[illegible]on	4
	Dignities	16
Debil. of ☿	Peregrine	5
	Oriental of ☉	2
	In ♂ of ♂	3
	Debilities	10

Hence ☿ appears to be strong by 6 Testimonies.

Dignities and Debilities } *of* ☽

Dign. of ☽	In the 7th house	4
	Increasing in Light	2
	Not Combust	5
	Swift in Motion	2
	Face	1
	Debilities	14

Debilities the ☽ hath none, neither Essential nor Accidental. Therefore the ☽ is strong by 14 Testimonies.

Dignities and Debilities } of ⊕

Dign. of ⊕	In ♐	4
	Not Combust	5
	In the 5th house	3
	Dignities	12

Debilities of ⊕ are onely in the Terms of ♂ 2

Hence ⊕ is strong by 10 Testimonies

♄ ♃ ♂ ☽ ☿ ♀ ☊ ⊕	is strong by	2 3 4 10 6 14 10	Testimonies
☉	is weak by	6	

Thus it appears by the whole work that the ☽ is Almuten, or Lady of the geniture, because she surmounts all the rest of the Planets in Testimonies of strength; and this the more certain, because she is in △ to the ☉ Lord of the Ascendent. But ♀ will participate, being posited in the Ascendent, and having 10 Testimonies of strength also. and therefore may aptly be termed Co-partner with the ☽. So that the Actions, Inclinations, and Conditions of the Native should be (for the most part) according to the Nature of the ☽ and ♀. and so the Complection and Manners much Regulated according to their significations & properties assigned them

Of

§ 4.
Of the Complexion of the Native.

This is thought to be a matter of Difficulty by some Authors, yet Physicians account it very easie to judge of the Complexion of any person. And indeed they should be best acquainted therewith, Their Method is briefly thus.

1 *Consider what Signe possesseth the Horoscope (or Ascends at Birth) and Judge according to the Nature of that Signe, as if* ♊ *Ascend an Aereal Signe, the Native is Sanguine, If* ♋ *a Watery Signe Phlegmatique. If* ♌ *a Firy Signe Cholerique. If* ♑ *an Earthy Signe, Melancholly, &c. If two Signes are concerned in the Ascendent, mix their significations.*

2 *You are also to Consider the Lord of the Ascendent, the Planet or Planets therein, or in Aspect (partile) thereunto.*

3 *The* ☽ *and those Planets she is in Aspect with.*

4 *The Lord of the Geniture, and Signe the* ☉ *is in (viz. the quarter of the Year.)*

5 *Lastly, Consider the qualities of the several significators, and Collect their Testimonies, viz. Hot, Moist, Cold, Dry, and judge according to the Major Testimonies.*

[The qualities of the Signes and Planets you will finde in the first part.]

If Heat and Moisture Predominate, the Native is Sanguine, If Cold and Moisture, Phlegmatique. If Heat and Driness, Cholerick. If Cold and Driness, Melancholly. [Note that if one Planet be *Almuten* of the Geniture, and Lord of the Horoscope, allow him a threefold vertue in the Complexion of the Native, or the ☽ in the *Ascendent*, you are to double her Testimonies.]

This being premised 'twill be no hard matter to finde the Temperament or Complexion of the Native in any Geniture.

Example in the proposed Nativity.

	Hot	Moist	Cold	Dry
Signe *Ascending* ♌	1	0	0	1
Lord thereof ☉	1	0	0	1
Posited in ♎	1	1	0	0
Almuten ☽	0	1	1	0
Posited in ♒	1	1	0	0
In ☍ to the *Ascendent* from ♒	1	1	0	0
In △ to the ☉ from ♒	1	1	0	0
Season of the Year *Autumn*	0	0	1	1
☽ in the second quarter	1	0	0	1
☉ in ✶ to the *Ascendent* from ♎	1	1	0	0
	8	6	2	4

Hence it appears the Native should be most Hot and Moist. [*viz.* Sanguine] *and somewhat Cholerique.*

But Sanguine is the most Predominat, which is confirmed by the position of no less then 5 Planets in Aerial Signes.

Note that the Qualities of the ☽ in her quarters are thus accounted.

From her	☌ to the first qu	is	hot and moist	that is Sanguine.
	first q. to the full		Hot and dry	Choleric
	full to the last q		cold and dry	Melancb.
	last q. to the chi.		cold & moist	Phlegm.

§ 5.
Of the Manners of the Native.

1 *Any Planet in the Aſcendent, whether Intercepted or upon the Guſp thereof, ſhall be the principle ſignificator of Manners* [eſpecially if he be Lord of the Aſcendent, or Nativity, or have Dignities in the ſigne Aſcending, or be in any Partil Aſpect of the ☽ or ☿.]

2 *Many planets in the Aſcendent gives variety of Manners*, i. e. [ſhews the qualities of the minde are accordingly mutable and various] *But that Planet which is moſt ſtrong and powerful ſignifies the moſt Durability, and thoſe that are leſs potent Intermix their Influence in the Natives Manners alſo.*

3 *If no Planet be in the aſcendent, Judge from the Lord of the Aſcendent (if his Diſpoſitor behold him) or rather the Lord of the Geniture, or that Planet that forcibly beholds ☿ or ☽ as aforeſaid, Conſideration had to thoſe fixed Stars neer the Ecliptique, that are Joyned to the Significator.*

4 *When it ſhall ſo happen, that a Good, or Benevo-*

lent Planet is Significator of the Qualities of the minde, it argues the Native to be of a most excellent and commendable Deportment and Behaviour: on the contrary if a Malevolent Planet signifie the Manners of the Native, it declares him of an ill Disposition, sufficiently Clownish, and Brutish: In fine, Indued with Unsavory, and Corrupt Manners, or Behaviour, and this according to the Nature of the Significator and his position.

5 The Durability, or Continuance of the Natives Manners is known from the directions of the Ascendent, and the ☽. And the several Changes, or Renovations are known from the Nature of the (several) Promittors they are directed unto, if to the good Aspects of the Fortunate and good Planets, it Imports (thus much) that the Natives Manners, and Inclinations are then commendable, his Actions civil and honest, &c. On the contrary, if under a bad Direction of those Significators to some evil Aspect of the Infortunes, then the Native is of a very unhandsom, uncivil Deportment and Behaviour, and his Manners no way Laudable but Offensive and Distastful. &c.

Example.

In the proposed geniture I find Cor Leonis Arising and ♀ in the Ascendent, also ♂ in ☌ of ☿, and the ☉ Lord of the Ascendent in Exact △ to the ☽. So that all these significators are concerned in the Natives Manners therefore it should be very various, and this according to their several significations, as they are but meanly posited in the Figure, Ergo, the Natives Inclinations and Manners naturally intermix, according to the former Rules, indifferent Harsh, but (to my knowledge) the force of Education (prevailing) doth much abate the fury of his Natural Inclinations. He is a person

that

thats Courteous and Affable to all, Magnanimous, and of a Noble, and Generous Disposition, (as Cor ♌ so near the Cusp of the Ascendent well notes) and one that Aims at no mean or low things in the world.

§ 6.

Of the Witt, or Understanding of the Native.

1 The Wit or Understanding of the Native is taken from ☿ chi fly, and his Configuration with ☽, ☿ governs the Animal Spirits in the Brain, and the ☽ the strength thereof, hence then if these Planets be well posited in any Geniture, it argues the Native to be of a most pregnant Wit, and excellent Understanding: Understand the same if they friendly behold each other or there be mutual Reception between them, but if you finde these significators ill posited, Weak, or Afflicted Judge the contrary.

2 The □ Aspect of ☿ and the ☽ gives plenty of Wit to the Native, but 'tis unpolisht and rugged, the ☌ of ☽ and ☿ from Angles gives a very stubborn, and turbulent Wit: ☿ in Receptionof ♂ from ♈ sharpens the Wit, ☿ Swift in motion shewes the Native to have a very quick apprehension, but subject to mutability in his opinion, If ☿ be under the Earth the Native is very propense to Arts and Sciences, if above the Earth his Inclinations are more to Oratory, and strives to speak well, ☿ in an Angle and free from affliction of ♄ or ♂, or if ☿ be posited in Aereal Signes, in Aspect with the Fortunes: this Argues the Native hath a good Understanding, a sharp Wit, and in fine a most excellent Genious, Capable of any thing, a person of admirable Conceptions,

3 Lo k

3 Look upon the position of ☿ in any Nativity, and consider, the stronger he is, the greater is the Understanding and Ingenuity of the native; take notice also what Planets he is in Aspect (or ☌) with, and accordingly moderate your Judgement. [*Thus, According to the position (strength or weakness) of* ☿ *you may most easily judge of the Natives Wit and Understanding. For if you find him Cadent, or in Detriment, Combust, Peregrine, or Retrograde, or otherwise afflicted, or slow in Motion, &c. this argues but a very mean Wit, and raw Understanding, if strong and potent, and in good Aspect of the* ☽ *or Fortunes, the Contrary as before Intimated.*]

Example:

In the Geniture I finde ☿ under the Earth, in ♎ an Aereal Signe, in Reception of ♀ and ☌ of ♂ Lord of the 9*th* (and 4*th*) and the ☽ in ♒, another Aereal Signe, beholding the ☉ by a friendly △, and lately separated from a △ of ☿ also. these are all arguments of Ingenuity, and that the *Native* is indued with an acute Wit, a searching Fancy, Inclinable to *Arts* and Sciences, and *Lastly*, a searcher into many hidden Secrets of Nature.

§ 7.
Of the Stature and Forme of the Body.

In judging of this, you are first to consider the Signe *Ascending*, the Lord thereof and those *Planets* in the *Ascendent*, as also the Luminaries according to the Signes they are in, not omitting the consideration of the fixed Stars that arise at Birth, and by a judicious mixture, accor-

according to their ſeveral deſcriptions and ſhapes; you cannot fail exactly (according to art) to give a true deſcription of the Stature, Form and Shape of the Body.

1 If you find the Planets in Aereal, or Firy Signes, they declare the Native to be of a full, and large Stature, but if in Watery, or Earthy Signes, it ſignifies the body more ſhort, and little, the members thereof tending much to Brevity. If they have South Latitude the Native is Active and Nimble, If North Latitude, more Heavy and Sluggiſh.

2 If you find the Lord of the Aſcendent, or Planets therein to be ſtrong and potent, the body will be more Decent and Comely, and well proportioned, if the Significator be Weak, and much debilitated, judge the contrary.

3 More eſpecially, take notice of the Nature of the Signe Aſcending, the Lord of the Aſcendent and his poſition, alſo the place of the ☽, (in every Nativity,) for by theſe you may moſt Rationally judge of the proportion and ſtature of the Body, as to deſcriptions; What the Signes and Planets ſignifie alone, you are ſufficiently directed in the firſt part; and by a due Conſideration thereof, and theſe brief directions, an Artiſt cannot be much at a loſs in his judgement in this particular. [*Much might be ſaid upon this very Subject of the deſcription of perſons*,) but I onely touch at the principal heads, leaving the ſeveral circumſtances adhering, as uſeleſs, and too much burthenſome to the memory, for multiplicity of rules concerning one thing do rather confound then inform your judgment.]

Example.

In the propoſed Geniture I finde ♌ a firy ſigne

Signe Horoscopial, the Lord thereof in ♎ and ☌ ☊ arising; which intimates the Native to be of a strong well set Body, big Bon'd, somewhat above a middle Stature, a sad Brown, or dark Flaxen Hair, &c. The ☽ is in ♒ in △ to the ☉. which doth confirm this description, it also denotes him to be a person of a Resolute Spirit, an Aspiring Brain, of a Generous, and Free-hearted Courteous Disposition, an Active Body and Sanguine Complexion. *See this description* page 11 first part.

His Form and Stature is very well known, but here may be seen the Concurrence of Art, which will not a little satisfie such as are apt to Cavil at (and Cry down) those things they understand not.

---

§ 8.

Of the Fortune, or Misery of the Native in general.

All the Planets Essentially dignified, or many Receptions between them, argue the Natives general Fortune to be Exceeding good, more particularly if you finde the Luminaries well posited, as also the ♃, this confirmes the Judgement, Consider also the Lord of the Ascendent, and Almuten of the Geniture if they are well seated in the Figure, and in good Aspect of the Fortunes, why these are notable Argumens that the Native will live happily in the World, and this according to the Degree of Birth, many times the Native is much advanced above his Original Capacity, but withal the directions of the Nativity (in this Case) must be consulted, and see what good, or ill is promised thereby, if these happen to concur

cur, the Native will be more famous; though whilst he continues under the force of bad Directions, he must expect to have his Felicity somewhat clowded.

2 *If in the Figure you find the Planets weak and debilitated, and posited in Abject places thereof. &c. Why then you may Conclude the Native will be subject to many Miseries, and Misfortunes, diverse Changes and Mutations; and in fine, but a disconsolate, and districted Life in the General, except upon the force of some good Directions the* ☉ *may shine upon him (as I may say) and so between whiles intermix some Comfort to the Native, but he rarely arrives to any height of Honour, for continuance in the World.*

Of these things there hath been many eminent Examples of both kinds in the World, and may be discovered from the Nativity, by Rules of Art.

Example.

In the Exemplary Geniture the Planets are not Essentially strong, but there are two good Receptions one betweee the two superiour Planets ♄ *and* ♅, *another between* ♀ *and* ☿ *the Luminaries casting both of them a friendly* ✶ *to* ⊕ *and Notable fixed Stars possess the angles of the Figure, the* ☉ *doth also friendly behold the Cusp of the Ascendent and the* ☽, *and there are several good Directions (as well as bad) that fall out in the Nativity, these things being duly considered and laid together (although the Planets are not Essentially dignified, and upon that account it may be said to be but a mean Nativity) hence I judge the general fortune of the Native to be (Reasonably) good, and that he shall by a careful Industry live happily, and finde such friends and accquaintance in the World that he shall rarely miscarry, or be exposed to want, or indigency, yet subject to Mutability, exercising his Ingennity in many Varieties*

ties and Curiosities, which perhaps may not be so much look't upon by the World, as many (less deserving) have been.

Thus much for the Judgement of the first house. I have been the larger hereon, because it doth (in a manner) comprepend all the rest. I must be more brief in those which follow otherwise I shall too much exceed my purposed Limits, and leave no Room for other things Intended of very good use.

SECTION II.

Judgement proper to the second House of a Nativity, viz. Concerning the Substance, Riches, or Worldly Wealth of the Native, &c.

---

§ 1,

Of the several Significators which at the Birth (in an Astrological sence) design Riches, or Poverty, to the Native, &c.

1 *YOu are to Consider the Cusp of the second house the Lord thereof, and any Planet or Planets posted therein.*

2 *The*

2 *The* ☉ *and his Dispositor, with those Planets that behold either of the aforesaid Significators, let their Aspect be good or evil.*

3 *Having taken a serious view of these several significators, and their strength or weakness, you may from thence judge of the Natives worldly Estate, and the goods of Fortune, whether it will be considerable or not, or whether the Stars threaten him with Poverty, Penury, and want, &c.*

4 *If by a diligent Collection of Testimonies you find the major part to be very Strong, and Fortunate, this is an argument that the Native shall enjoy a very competent Fortune, and live happily in the World. But if they are found Weak, and much Debilitated, judge the Contrary: If the Testimonies happen to be equally Ballanced on both sides, Judge a Mediocrity, that then the Native shall live in a mean way seldom sensible of much want, and rarely at any time abound, but make a shift to struggle along in in the world.* [Though upon the effects of some good Direction of the Significators of Substance, the Native may be sencible of an unwonted Revenue, but of no long continuance.]

§ 2.

Arguments of Wealth, and Poverty, &c.

2 If ♃ be Essentially strong in the second house, and in any good Aspect with the Luminaries, or Lord of the Ascendent, or if the ☽ be in the Ascendent, or hath Dignities in the second, this shews the Native shall enjoy a considerable Fortune and durable.

2 The

2 The Luminaries beholding each other by a benevolent Aspect from good places of the figure, denotes the Native shall arive to great honour and abound in riches, and the rather if both (or either) of them be essentially strong: the same you may judge if ☉ be Located in the second, and well Dignified, or friendly Irradiated by the Fortunes, Especially ♃ who is a general Significator of Wealth.

3 If ♃ ♀ ☉ or *Caput Draconis* be posited in the second house, or if the Fortunes behold the Cusp thereof friendly, or if the Luminaries be near benevolent fixed Stars, or Lastly, Many Planets strong and Potent in the second, these are all strong arguments (in Art) that the Native shall be blessed with a most excellent fortune and sufficiently stored with riches even to his own hearts content.

4 But on the contrary, if you find none of these Testimonies, judge the Condition of the Native will be but low, and his Fortune very inconsiderable, especially if you find the Significators much afflicted, or ♌ in the second; or many Planets ill dignified therein, if so, you may be confident the Native shall not be troubled much with worldly Pelf, but live in a very Poor Mean way in the World and Consequently much dis-esteemed, and of no Repute therein.

5 The ☉ or ♂ in the second, wasts the Natives Estate, the same you may judge if you find ♄ in ♂ of ☽ in an Angle, or if ♄ or ♂ afflict the second house, or Lord thereof, or ☉, Or if ☉ be near violent fixed Stars, these are arguments of Poverty, and that the Native shall be reduced to Want, although once he (for a time) enjoyed an Estate, this hath been often verified, and many have found it too true, by woful experience.

6 If you find arguments of Riches in the Figure, and would

would know by what means the Native shall obtain it, why then consider the Nature of the promising Planet, and what house he is Lord of, and accordingly moderate your judgement, and you cannot fail of satisfaction in this particular, [*after the same method you may judge on the contrary part.*]

Example,

In the proposed Geniture I find ☿ *Lord of the second afflicted by* ♂ *Lord of the fourth, which intimates that the Natives Estate hath been much diminished by the means of his Father who was much addicted to Gaming, &c. to his prejudice, (which was confessed, and is a real truth) and is* ♄ *in* ♂ *to the second house being posited near the Cusp of the 8th, which is the 5th from the 4th (the house of Gameing) as also to* ♀ *(who is near the Cusp thereof in her fall) on the other side I find the Luminaries in friendly* △ *from no bad houses, as also* ☉ *near Spica Virginis a Star of a Benevolent Nature, and the* ☽ *in* ✶ *to* ♃ *who is disposed of by* ♅, *these things considered, the Native (notwithstanding some loss and detriment in point of Estate) should arrive to a competent Fortune, and a reasonable degree of Honour in the world though not to such a height as might be expected had the Significators been Essentially Dignified, Strong, and Potent: Thus much in general, but more particularly, let the Native beware of prejudice as to Estate, from Martial and Saturnine persons for the Significators of Substance are much afflicted by both the Infortunes in this Scheame, Dammage is also threatned in long Journeys, and from Servants and all other things relating to the 6th and 9th, as also the 7th and 4th houses, But the Native is promised most profit from such persons signified by the* ☽ *and* ♀, *viz. the femal Sex in general, and all vulgar persons he deals with al, which may be*

inſtrumental to make the Natives Name Famous, for though the ☽ be in ☌ to the Aſcendent, ſhe is in △ to the Lord thereof, and hath great dignities in the 10th. houſe as well as ♀ Lady thereof.

Obſerve further, that ♃ is poſited in the 6th houſe, and hath great Dignities in the 12th (viz. the 6th from the 7th) he alſo caſts a friendly △ Aſpect to ♂ and ☿ in the third, which doth much abate the fury of ♂ and fortifie ☿ and plainly intimates that the Native may gain profit from diſeaſed perſons, and ſuch whoſe Maladies, and Diſtempers requires his help both in Phyſick and Chyrurgery, he being a perſon very Dextrous in all Manual operations, appertaining to any member or part of the Body, eſpecially the moſt tendereſt, viz. The Eyes, for he is excellent at that curious operation of Couching the Cataract, or Suffuſion in the Eyes, and hath had good ſucceſs therein, and that he ſhould be ſo is very well ſignified by the poſition of the Luminaries, who behold each other by a Benevolent △ Aſpect; The ☽ being Lady of the 12th. which denotes the Diſtempers and Diſeaſes of thoſe perſons no way related unto him. ♃ is alſo Lord of the 8th and 5th, which declares the Native may be Fortunate in Gaming, and that he ſhould receive ſome augmentation of Eſtate by the Legacy of ſome Deſceaſed perſon, or portion of a Wife, The which he confeſſes to be very true.

Sect.

SECTION III.

Judgement upon the third houſe of a Nativity.

§ 1.

Shall the Native have Brethren Siſters &c.

1 OBſerve the Signe of the third houſe, the Lord thereof, and the ☽, and (as Aſtrologers Direct) examine whether any (or all) of them be poſited in fruitful Signes or Fruitful Planets poſited in the third houſe, [*What thoſe Signes be* See pag. 2. firſt part.] If you find the Significators poſited in ſuch Signes, it argues the Native either hath or may have Brothers or Siſters, or if any of them are in good Aſpect of of fruitful Planets, ♃ ♀ and ☽, judge the ſame.

2 But on the contrary, if you finde the aforeſaid Significators in Barren Signes, or in Aſpect or Configuration with Barren Planets, (as ♄ and ♂ which are accounted Steril) or ♌ in the third, this argues the Native will have no Brethren or Siſters: Judge the ſame if the third houſe, or Lord thereof be much afflicted.

3 If you finde Teſtimonies that the Native may have Brothers or ſiſters, then conſider whether the ſignificators be in Maſculine or Feminine Signes and Houſes, or in Aſpect

with Maſculine or Feminine Planets, and accordingly judge whether the Native will have moſt Brethren or Siſters.

4 If the Significators themſelves are Maſculine, and poſited in ſuch Signes, or in Aſpect with Maſculine Planets, this argues the Native may have moſt Brethren; But if in Feminine Signes, &c. Moſt Siſters.

5 If you finde their Significators ſtrong and potent, and well Located in the Figure, judge their Condition to be Fortunate and happy; but if weak or much afflicted, judge the contrary; If ſome Significators are weak and others ſtrong, moderate your Judgement accordingly, as Reaſon will direct you,

---

§ 2.

Will the Native and his Brethren and Kindred accord and agree together?

---

1 If you finde a friendly Aſpect or Reception between the Lord of the Aſcendent, and Lord of the third houſe, from good places of the Figure, and the ☽ ſeparate and apply well, from and to the Significators, this argues a good agreement, and much unity between the Native and his Kindred: But if there be no Aſpect between their Significators, this prenotes very little familiarity Between them, but rather an unnatural kind of Strangeneſs, and no mutual Love and Affection the one towards the other.

2 If the Significators behold each other by ſome Malevolent Aſpect, or if the Infortunes happen to be poſited in the third houſe, this ſignifies much hatred and diſcord between

between the Native and his Kindred, and oftimes is much prejudiſed by them.

[*By what hath been ſaid 'twill be very eaſie to judge of the Natives ſhort (or Inland) Fourneys whether they will prove Fortunate and Proſperous or the contrary.*]

Example.

In the exemplary Nativity I find ♀ *is Lady of the third, and* ♆ *is in* △ *unto the Cuſp thereof; the* ☽ *doth alſo behold that houſe by the ſame Benevolent Aſpect, and all* 3 *Fruitful Planets, which barely conſidered might well ſignifie the Native ſhould have Brothers, or Siſters, or both.*

But on the other ſide I find firſt ♀ *Lady of the third in* ♍ *her detriment and a Barren Signe, extreamly afflicted by the malicious* ☌ *of* ♄ *a Barren Planet, unto whoſe Body the* ☽ *applies. Secondly,* ♂ *and* ☉ *poſited in the third houſe, which are ſufficient Teſtimonies, and ſtrong Arguments in Art, that the Native ſhould have but few or no Brethren or Siſters, and indeed he never had any, which doth much verifie the truth of this Doctrine.*

His Inland Fourneys cannot be very proſperous for the aforeſaid reaſons, neither can they be much unpleaſant by reaſon the ☽ *is in* △ *to the* ☉ *Lord of the Aſcendent, who is poſited in the* 3*d houſe, however the Native is adviſed to be exceeding Careful he falls not into the hands of Thieves in his ſhort Fourneys, becauſe* ☿ *Lord of the ſecond is ſo much afflicted by* ♂ *in the* 3*d, and* ♄ *who is Exalted in the* 3*d. is in* ☌ *to the Cuſp of the ſecond houſe, and to* ♀ *Lady of the* 3*d houſe alſo; as before hinted which ſeems to threaten no leſs.*

SECTION IV.

Judgement proper to the fourth House.

§ 1,

Of the Natives Patrimony or Estate left by the Father, &c.

1 CONsider whether the Birth be Diurnal or Nocturnal, or Noctutnal. In a Diurnal Geniture if the ☉ be in any good Configuration of the Fortunes from the second and fourth house, it signifies the Native may have a considerable Patrimony, and shall much improve the same; This the more certain if they have any dignities in the 4th house. Understand the same if the Birth were Nocturnal and the ☽ and ♄ well Configurated with ♃ or ♀ as aforesaid, on the contrary if you find either in a Diurnal or Nocturnal Geniture, the Significators afflicted, and no interposition of the friendly Rays of the Fortunes, this declares a Consumption of the Natives Patrimony, and that he shall be little bettered thereby.

2 The Fortunes posited in the 4th house, and free from the malignant Rayes of ♄ or ♂, denotes good success to the Native in all things relating, or signified by the fourth house, as Husbandry, Purchasing of Land, hidden Treasure Mines, &c. This

This is the more confirmed if ⊕ or ☊ happen to be there also, and well beheld by their dispositor, it also signifies much Riches to accrue to the Native towards the latter part of his Life (or when he grows Ancient.)

3 The condition of the Father is known by the strength or weakness of the Lord of the 4th and the ☉ in a Diurnal Geniture, and the ☽ and ♄ in a Nocturnal.

The ☉ ♄ ♂ or ♀ in the 4th signifies the short Life of the Father; the same if they cast bad Aspects thereunto.

But if the Fortunes are posited therein, or friendly Irradiate the same. Judge the contrary.

---

§ 2.

Of the mutual Love and Agreement of the Native and his Father.

---

4 If you find Reception between the Lord of the 4th and the Lord of the Ascendant, or if they behold each other by ✶ or △ Aspect this argues much Love and Amity between the Native and his Father; The same you may judge if the ☽ do well behold the Significators, or translate the Benevolent Rays of Light of the one to the other, or if the or the the Lord of the Ascendent do friendly behold ♄ or ☉.

2 But if you find the aforesaid Significators evilly beholding each other from bad places of the Figure or from Angles without Reception, you may judge the contrary, and positively conclude but an ill Agreement, and a low ebb of mutual Love between the Native and his Father.

Example

In the Geniture proposed ♂ is Lord of the 4th, Ergo, Significator of the Natives Father in his detriment, viz. in ♎ in the 3d. nearly in △ of the ☉ Lord of the Ascendant (within their Orbs) and in ☌ of ☿ Lord of the second, which intimates the condition of the Natives Father (when living) was such, that instead of augmenting he much consumed the Natives Patrimony, as before I have shewed; and that his Father had an Estate is declared by ♓ in the 5th ♑ disposition thereof is in friendly △ to ♂ and ♌ near the Cusp of the 4th, Cor Scorpii is also posited in the 4th which presages him to be a person of no base or low Spirit, and as there are no considerable testimonies of much Love between the Native and his Father, so on the other side there are but few arguments of Hatred or Prejudice to the Native from his Father save onely in his Patrimony as already I have sufficiently hinted.

SECTION V.

Judgement upon the 6th house of a Nativity.

---

§ 1.

Of the Diseases (or Bodily Infirmities) the Native may be most subject unto.

THE health of the Body is discovered from the strength of these several Significators, as first the Signe Ascending

cending and Lord thereof. *Secondly*, The Luminaries. *Thirdly*, From the 6th house and the Lord thereof, or Planets posited therein. *Fourthly*, From the 7th house and the Lord thereof, because 'tis opposit to the Ascendent which signifies the Life and Temperament of the Native; the ☉ rules the Vital Spirits, and the ☽ the humours of the Body.

2 If in any Geniture you find these several significators (or the major part of them) strong and potent, and favourably beheld by the Fortunes, being free from the malicious Aspects (or bodies of ♄ and ♂) these are arguments that the Native is of a very healthful constitution, and will not be subject to Diseases, but for the most part very healthful and a person of a sound able Body.

But if you find the Significators weak, or much afflicted either by the Infortunes, or the presence of Malevolent fixed Stars; Judge the contrary. [*What Diseases the Planets and Signes do signifie you may read in the first part.*]

Defects of the Eyes.

3 If you find the Luminaries afflicted by the Infortunes especially from Angles, it threatens great danger to the Eyes, and many times absolute Blindness; Judge the same if the ☉ and ☽ are in ☌, and the more certain if the ☌ happens from Angles. *Note that if* ♄ *be in the Ascendent in any Signe except* ♈ *or* ♒ *he greatly afflicts the teeth.*

[*Defects in the Hearing.*]

4 If ☿ happen to be much afflicted by the Malevolent Aspects of ♄ it signifies some Defect in the Hearing, and threatens the Native with Deafness. If ☿ be Lord of the 6th house, or have great Dignities therein, or in the 1st,

Defects

[*Defects in the Speech.*]

5 Take this for a General Rule that wherever you finde ☿ Lord of the 6th much afflicted, or in ☌ of the ☉, or evilly beheld of either of the Lights, especially from Angles, the Native then is sure to have some defect in his Speech, and is either subject to stammering, or (at least) a very ill Delivery or Elocution.

---

§ 2.
Of Servant or small Cattle.

[*Honest Servants.*]

1 If you find the fortunate Planets posited in the 6th house and free from affliction, it declares the Natives Servants to be just and honest, and that he shall again by them, or any small Cattle he shall happen to deal in, and this the rather if they behold the Ascendent or Lord thereof with any Benevolent Aspects; Judge the same if you finde the ☽ or Lord of the 6 ♄ and ☿ Fortunate in an Angle or if there be any good Aspect or Reception between the Lord of the 6 ♄ and the Lord of the *Ascendent*. For these are strong Testimonies of Diligent and Faithful Servants, and consequently such as the Native may receive much profit by. [*The same is (in all respects) to be understood of all sorts of Cattle of the smaller sort as Sheep, Hogs, &c.*

2 If you finde the Infortunes in the 6 ♄ but weak and in ill *Aspect* to the *Ascendent* or Lord thereof, or if the Lord of the 6th be in □ or ☍ to the Lord of the *Ascendent* or ☿ much afflicted (which is a general Significator of

of Servants) you may then judge the Natives Servants to be very knaviſh and careleſs perſons, ſuch as he will receive much damage by, *Ergo* no way to be truſted unto, or confided in, neither can he expect to be Fortunate in dealing in ſmall Cattle of any ſort, under which, is Included all kind of tame Fowl, Birds and Poultry, &c.

Note that all Chollerique diſeaſes proceed from Firy Signes, all Melancholly from Earthy, Phlegmatick from Watry, and diſtempers of the Blood from Aery Signes,

Illuſtration by example.

In the Nativity propoſed, ♄ *is the Lord of the 6. h houſe and in* ♂ *to* ♀ *who is poſited in the Aſcendent, the* ☽ *Lady of the* ♑. *doth alſo oppoſe the Signe Aſcending, the Lord of the Aſcendent, viz. the* ☉ *is the weakeſt Planet in the whole Scheam, and* ♂ *beholds the 6th houſe (though not the very Cuſp thereof) by a Quartil Aſpect, all which declares the Native to be a Sickly perſon, or one of no ſtrong Conſtitution.*

But on the other ſide finding ♃ *in the 6th (although Lord of the 8th) it ſtrong Reception with* ♄ *Lord thereof and the* ☽ *in* △ *to the* ☉, *alſo a Benevolent fixed Star conjoyned with the Lord of the Aſcendent, this doth much mitigate the former ill ſignification, and hence I may conclude the Native to be reaſonably healthful, yet doubtleſs ſubject more or leſs to diſeraſineſs of Body, he confeſſes he was very much afflicted with bodily diſtempers in his minority, but ſince he came to years he hath been much more healthful. Note that the Parents Nativity ſhould be inſpected for information in this particular for healthful Parents have generally healthful Children.*

The diſeaſes the Native is moſt Subject unto ſhould be Melancholly and Phlegmatick diſtempers, becauſe ♄ *denotes no leſs being poſited, in a Watry Signe, and in* ♂

to

to ♀ in an Earthy Signe, alſo ☽ an Earthy Signe upon the Cuſp of the 6th houſe, the Native is therefore adviſed to uſe the beſt means he can to prevent a Conſumption which in all probability he will be very ſubject to fall into, and is plainly intimated by the Lord of the 6th and his poſition as before exp. e.d.

SECTION. VI.

Judgement proper to the 7th houſe of a Nativity.

---

§ 4.
Shall the Native Marry, &c.

THe Significators of Marriage are, firſt, the Cuſp of the 7th houſe, and Lord thereof, the Planet or Planets poſited therein. Secondly, the ☽ and ♀ are generally Significators in Mens Nativities, and the ☉ and ♂ in Womens Ganitures. Now by a due Conſideration of the poſitions of theſe ſignificators and their ſeveral Configurations with the Lord of the Aſcendent, as alſo how they behold the Degrees Aſcending, you may draw your judgement concerning Marriage of any Native, whether ever they will Marry, or if more then once, &c.

Arguments of Marriage.

1. *If you find the Lord of the firſt apply by any good Aſpect*

Aſpect to the Lord of the 7th, or if they be in Reception, or if ♀ or the ☽ be in any good Aſpect or Reception with him, the ☉, or ♂, the Native will have a propenſity to Marriage, Judge the ſame if you find the Significators in fruitful Signes.

2 Sol ♑ *or* ♀ *friendly Irradiating the Cuſp of the ſeventh houſe ſignifies the Native will aſſuredly Marry.*

[Not Marry.]

3 *When you find the Significators weak in ſterril (or Barren) Signes, or* ♄ *ſtrong poſited in the 1ſt, 5th, 7th or 11th houſes in Barren Signes, or if* ♀ *and the* ☽ *are in* □ *or* ☍ *of* ♄ *this ſhews an Indiſpoſition in the Native to Marriage and preſages a ſingle life, Judge the ſame if* ♀ *be unfortunate in* ♌.

[If Marry more then once.]

4 *If you find the Significators in fruitful Signes, or the* ☽ *and* ♀ *poſited ſtrong in the 7th houſe, in a double-bodyed Signe, being free from the Malevolent Rayes of the Infortunes, this declares the Native will Marry more then once.*

5 *If the* ☽ *or* ♀ *apply to many Planets, and poſited in double bodied Signes, or if you find many Planets in the 7th although they behold not* ♀ *or the* ☽ *eſpecially if the Lord of the Aſcendent be there, or if the Lord of the Aſcendent be in any friendly Aſpect with the Lord of the 7th from Bi-Corporeal Signs; Theſe are arguments of plurality of Wives. Judge the ſame if the Significators of Marriage behold each other well, and are at unity amongſt themſelves from good houſes of the Figure.*

6 *If*

6 *If the Significators are afflicted by the Infortunes, and posited in Signes representing one form, why then you may be confident the Native shall Marry but once, if at all.*

[Aphorisms]

7 Venus *Oriental and strong being essentially dignified in any Geniture, most aptly denotes the wife will predominate and wear the breeches.*

If ♀ *in any Nativity be posited in the* 10*th house shews the Native shall marry into a Credible Family, and gain much profit (as well as honour and preferment) thereby. But if she be posited in the second house in any Giniture of either Sex the Native Marries more for Money then Love.*

♀ *in* ♒ *or* ♋ *in* ☐ *or* ☍ ☽ *and posited in the North Angle, signifies the Native will be very subject to wander beyond their own limits to satisfie their Lusts. If* ♀ *happen to be in* ♂ ☐ *or* ☍ *of* ♂ *Judge the same that the Native will not onely be of a very high Spirit, but frequently change their Pasture and make use of more then lawfully belongs unto them i. e. Much guilty of Adultery, &c.*

♀ *afflicted by* ♄ *in the 7th, denotes the person the Native marries to be deficient and weak in Venereal Sports. Or if she be with* ♄ *or* ♂ *in the 6th, the Native Marries a very dishonest person. If in* ♈ *or* ♋ *there, assure your self the person the Native Marries, either Man or Woman will prove such as we term* RIGHT.

But if ♀ *be in Configuration with* ♄ ♅ *and* ☿ *all together, this signifies the Native to Marry a very Careful Industrious and Laborious person.*

§ 2.

What manner of Perſon ſhall the Native Marry? Whether Fair or Deformed, and how qualified? &c.

1 *Having carefully Obſerved the Signe of the 7th, and Lord thereof, alſo any Planet poſited in the 7th houſe by a Judicious Commixture of their ſeveral deſcriptions you may artificially make a deſcription of her perſon, which if you find them poſited in* ♊ ♍ ♎ *or* ♐ *they ſignifie a Neat, Handſome, and Comely Creature, and this the rather, provided the Significators be ſtrong and eſſentially dignified, if you find them in* ♈, ♉, ♑ *or* ♌, *this declares a perſon much deformed, and no way Beautiful or Lovely: and ſo much the worſe if the Significators be weak or afflicted.*

If in ♋, ♏, ♒, *or* ♓, *it intimates the Perſon the Native ſhall Marry ſhould be indifferent handſom, not much Commendable nor very Contemptible. But if* ♄ *happen to afflict the Significators, or they happen to be but weak it ſignifies the Perſon to be Incompoſed in Body, and perhaps Conditions Unſavory enough.*

But the ☽ *in good Aſpect of* ♃ *or* ♀, *or friendly beholding the Cuſp of the 7th, denotes a well Compoſed, Compleat, Proportioned Body.*

Thus much for the proportion of the Body; as for the deſcription of the Face, Colour of the Hair, Complexion, &c. it may be done by the firſt part, where you have the deſcription of the Signes and Planets, &c.

Con-

[Conditions.]

2 *If you would judge of the Quality, and Condition of the Person, consider the strength or weakness of the Lord of the 7th, or Planet posited therein, as also the ☽, and accordingly order your judgement with discretion.* Something to this purpose is already shewed at the latter end of the last §.

[Agreement.]

3 *If you desire to know what Agreement there will be, consider the significators of both parties, and see how they behold each other, if it be by good Aspect, and there be Reception between them, it argues a good* Agreement, *if they behold each other by* □ *or* ☍ *the contrary; If they are in no Aspect it declares no Respect they bear unto each other, &c.*

[Disagreement.]

4 *The Lord of the Ascendent or the ☽ in* □ *or* ☍ *of the Lord of the 7th from Angles in movable Signes, presages much Contention and Discord, so doth ♄ in the 7 h. But their Love and Hatred might be best discovered by considering the* Sympathy *or* Antipathy *that is between their Genitures, (if they may be procured.)*

[Time of Marriage.]

5 *The time of Marriage is best discovered by directions, viz. the Ascendent, to the* ✶ *or* △ *of the Lord of the 7th the ☽ or ♀ or the degree of the Cusp of the 7th to the aforesaid Significators, &c. or rather the* M. C. *Directed to any Aspect of ♀ if she were strong in the Radix, or*

or to the ☽ or the Lord of the 7th to the aforesaid promittors Direct and Converse.

6 If all the Significators of Marriage be Oriental of the ☉ Swift and Direct, declares Marriage in youth, but if Occidental of the ☉ and slow in motion, or Retrograde and more especially if ♄ be in the 7th, he then either Marries being pretty well in years, or else an Ancient Maid *or* Widdow *in his youth.* Lastly, *If you consider the strength of the Lord of the 8th, and how he Aspects the Lord of the second you may judge of the* PORTION *of the Wife, whether it be Considerable or not, If the Lord of the 8th behold the Lord of the second by ✶ or △, or if there be Reception between them or if ♎♀ or the ♌ be in the 8th, you may Conclude she hath a* PORTION *Considerable, and you shall be bettered thereby, but if the Significators of her Substance be weak, Afflicted, or any wayes Debilitated, or ♄ ♂ or ♍ in the 8th, judge the Contrary.*

Again if you find the Lord of the Ascendent stronger or more Potent then the Lord of the 7th, you may conclude the Native may probably Survive the person he Marries; But if the Lord of the 7th be strongest or the Lord of the Ascendent goes first to Combustion of the ☉, judge the Contrary.

Note that what hath been said of Mens Marriage, the same may be also understood of Womens also; Consideration had to the general Significators mentioned at the beginning of this Section; and for a person to know whether he or she shall Marry one of the same Country or not, I hold it not worth inserting, for it signifies little neither are the Rules laid down by the Antients in that particular, to be deemed Infallible.

§ 3.
Of the Natives publique Enemies.

1 *If the Lord of the Aſcendent be more Strong and Potent then the Lord of the 7th, the Native needs not fear the Malice of any of his publique Adverſaries. or if the Lord of the 7th be in any good Aſpect or Reception of the Lord of the Aſcendent or the ☽, the Native will have few or none that ſhall oppoſe or moleſt him,*

The ſame you may underſtand if the Fortunes be well placed in the 7th houſe.

2 *On the Contrary if you find the Infortunes poſited there, or the Lord of the 7th in □ or ☍ of the Lord of the Aſcendent, then the Native ſhall be perplexed and troubled by the means of his publique Enemies more or leſs Continually to his great vexation and diſcontent.*

For Illuſtration, I turn to the Exemplary Nativity, and firſt examine whether the Native will Marry?

1 I find ♄ Lord of the 7th houſe in ♓ a Fruitful Signe, and beholding ♀.

2 the ☽ in the 7th beholding the Aſcendent and in good Aſpect with the Lord thereof which are ſtrong Arguments (in Art) that the Native will not only have a propenſity to Marriage, but will aſſuredly Marry This Native was Married upon the direction of the Aſcendent to the Body of ♀ a general Significator of Marriage, his wife is ſignified by ♒, the Cuſp of the 7th, an Aery Signe, the ☽ near the deg-

degree thereof, and ♄ Lord of the 7th, house in ♓, which describes a well composed person, somewhat above a middle stature, strong, and well set, a brown Hair, a fleshy plump Body, and in fine every way decently enough compaſed.

The ☽ and ♀ are both Accidentally strong the ☽ in ♒, and ♀ in ♍, the one denotes a handsom proportioned Body, the other indifferent, according to the foregoing Rules. Therefore his body is proportional and the members thereof conformable; now finding ♄ in the 7th house in ☌ to ♀, this might declare (in an Astrological sense) that the Native would not have Married young, or a young person; but by reason ♀ is in the Ascendent and the ☽ upon the Cusp of the 7th in exact △ to the Lord of the Ascendent, and ♄ also Lord of the 7th, in a Fruitful Signe, and in Reception of ♃, this argues a strong inclination to Marriage as aforesaid.

Her conditions can be no way much distastful, or harsh by reason of the ☽ position in the 7th and ♄ Lord thereof in strong Reception with the Fortunate Planet ♃,

Their agreement should be good because the ☽ is in △ to the ☉. yet ♄ position in the 7th may a little stir up some petty Jars between the Native and his Wife.

Her Portion could not be Inconsiderable, because ♃ is Lord of the 8th, and dispositer of ♁, ♃ is also in △ to ♀ Lord of the second, *Ergo*, the *Native* bettered thereby, according to the Rule.

Publique Enemies the *Native* will have, because the ☽ opposes the Ascendent, and ♄ is in the 7th, the ☉ so exceeding weak, which intimates some prejudice from publique Adversaries, the edge of which suspition is much taken off by reason the ☽ (which generally signifies Women & vulgar persons) doth so friendly Irradiate ☉ Lord of the Ascendent, so often already hinted. This judgement hath been in all particulars Sufficiently verified, and what is here written is Really true; And so I conclude my judgement on the 7th house.

SECTION VII.

Judgement appertaining to the Fifth house of a Nativity.

§ 1.
May the Native have Children or not?

1 *HEre you are to observe the Cusps of the first, 5th and 11th houses (viz. the Wives fifth house, or house of Issue) together with their Lords, See if there be Fruitful Signes possess the Cusps of those houses, or if their Lords are Fruitful Planets ♃ or ♀ posited in Prolifical Signes; if so these are assured Testimonies the Native shall have Issue.*

2 *If the Lords of the aforementioned houses, or the ☽ be in Fruitful Signes, either in ☌ or good Aspect from such Signes it presages the Native shall have many Children. Judge the Contrary if you find the Significators in barren Signes, or otherwise much afflicted of the Infortunes, &c.*

3 *Lastly, Having seriously Considered the Testimonies of Fruitfulness and Barrenness, judge by the major Testimonies, if they fall equal help your self from Revolutions and Directions, but more especially have regard to the stock from and whence the Native sprung, and if there be no powerful Arguments in the Radix, that will much inform your Judgement.*

§ 2.

Of the Life and Condition of the Natives Children, as also their Sex, &c.

1 *As to the Life of the Natives Children you are to consider the strength of the Significators, if you find them essentially Dignified, and friendly Assisted by the beams of the Fortunes, you may conclude they will live to a considerable age, and their lives sufficiently Fortunate, and conveniently Happy.*

2 *But if you finde the Significators Weak and much Afflicted or Debilitated, or ♄, ♂, or ☋ posited in the 5th or 11th house, Judge the Contrary.*

3 *The Lord of the 5th in the 8th or ☿ in ☌ to ♄ from the first and 7th: or ♂ or ♄ in ☌ of ♅ or ♆, these are strong arguments the Natives Children are but short liv'd and live to no Maturity.*

4 *The condition of the Naaives Children is also known from the strength or weakness of the Significators, which if they happen to be strong and fortunate, it declares their Condition to be more Prosperous, but if you find them ill posited and much Debilitated, Judge the contrary.*

5 *The Sex is easily discovered by Collecting the Testimonies of the several Significators, if most Masculine judge most Males, if most Feminine, say most Females, if they fall equal conclude as many of the one Sex as of the other, &c.*

Illuſtration by Example.

In the Geniture I find the greater Fortune ♃ Lord of the 5th and ⊕ poſited therein, ☿ is Lord of the 11th poſited in an Aery Signe in △ to the 11th houſe, ♃ and the ☽ is in △ to the 11th, and ✶ to the 5th houſe alſo ♀ doth diſpoſe of the Lord of the 11th, and is in Reception with him by houſe, therefore the Native will undoubtedly have Iſſue, which hath already proved very true; But ♄ is in □ to the 5th and 11th houſes (although in Reception with ♃) and ♂ Afflicts poor ☿ Lord of the 11th houſe ſufficiently, therefore they cannot all be long lived. The Native as yet hath not been long Married, and hath had onely one Childe, and that dyed about 12, or 13 Months old, which agrees to the former judgement. Again their conditions cannot be very bad (though various thoſe that live) becauſe ☿ is oppreſt, on the other ſide ♃ is Lord of the 5th, the ⊕ therein, and ♃ in ſtrong Reception of ♄ Lord of their ſecond houſe (*viz* the 6th) *Laſtly* ⊕ in the 5th promiſes gain by *Play*, or that the Native ſhould be fortunate in ſuch kind of Exercizes.

The Teſtimonies being Collected would (I perceive) appear moſt Maſculine, *Ergo*, the Native ſhould have moſt Males.

Sect.

SECTION. VIII.

Judgement belonging to the 9th house

§ 1.

Shall the Native Travail or not?

1 *HEre you are to conſider the 9th houſe the Lord thereof and Planets poſited therein, together with the ☽ and ☿ (and ſome ſay ♂) from the conſideration of theſe Significators, &c. Judgement may be drawn whether the Native ſhall Travail out of his own Native Land yea or no?*

2 *The Signe of the 9th movable, and the Lord thereof poſited in a movable Signe, or if there be any Reception between the ☽ and ☿, or ☌ or Aſpect from movable Signes, this argues the Native may have a propenſity to Travail, and a ſtrong inclination to ſee far Countreys, judge the ſame if you find ☿ the ☽ or the Lord of the Aſcendent in the 9th or ☿ and the ☽ in the third, or the Lord of the 9th in the Aſcendent. Further obſerve whether the Lord of the Aſcendent or the ☉ be poſited in the houſes of the ☽ and ☿, or in ☌, Aſpect, or Reception, with either of them or the Lord of the 9th, theſe are ſtrong argumenta the Native will Travail, Laſtly, if you finde none of the Significators poſited as aforſaid, but the*

9th house or his Lord in fixed Signes, &c. Judge the contrary.

[Toward what part of the World.]

3 *If you would know towards what part or Quarter of the world the Native shall travail, then warily observe the Signes and houses the Significators are posited in, and according order your judgement; If you finde them in the Fiery Triplicity judge Eastward, (and the rather if they are posited in the Eastren quarter of the Figure) if in the Watry Triplicity, Northwards. But if in the Earthy triplicity, Southward, &c. See the quarters signified by the Signes and houses* Page 35, and 37 first part. *As also the several Countreys under the 12 Signes at the end of that part, and by a Collection of Testimonies, judge from the Major part, &c.*

[If profit or not by Travail.]

4 *If the Lord of the 9th and the several Significators of Travail be in good Aspect of the Lord of the Ascendent and second house, or otherwise strong and fortunate, judge the Native will advantage himselfe by Travail, but finding them weak and Infortunate, or in any bad Aspect of the Significators of the Native or his substance, judge the contrary.*

If you would know what places may be most profitable to Travail unto, consider the Signs of the 1st, 2d, 10th, and 11th houses as also the Signs wherein they are placed the Lord of the second ♃, ♀, ☊, *or* ⊕, *and see what Countreys are under those Signes, and to those places let the Native chuse to Travail.*

The occasion of Travail is easily discerned by a due consideration of the Significators, *viz.* the houses they are posited in, and the Planets they are in Aspect withal, and from thence order your Judgement According to the Rules of Art.

§ 2.

Of the Natives Religion, *viz:* Will he prove Religious? &c.

1 *The ſtarrs do ſignifie the inclinations of perſons in this particular alſo, but the operation of their Effects are chiefly upon thoſe that continue in their Natural ſtate and condition. It is the Grace of God implanted in the hearts that makes perſons purſue after (and delight in) Godlineſs; and only the operations of the Spirit of God which cauſes them to be Religious, &c. The ſtars only ſhew the Natural propenſity of the Native to Good or Ill, and the durability thereof.*

2 *He that hath* ♃, ♀, *or* ☊ *in the 9th houſe, or the Lord of the Aſcendent in the 9th or third houſes in good Aſpect or Reception of* ♃, *or of the* ☉, ♀, ☿, *or the* ☽, *theſe are ſtrong arguments the Native will be a great lover of Religion, having a ſtrong inclination to Godlineſs, and in fine a Vertuous, Religious, Godly perſon.* [Judge the ſame if ♄ be in his Eſſential dignities in the 9th.

3 *But if* ♄, ♂, *or* ☋ *be poſited in the 9th houſe, weak, or otherwiſe afflicting the Lord thereof, or the Lord of the Aſcendent or the* ☽, *or if* ♃ *be afflicted of the Infortunes, theſe denotes the Native to be a perſon of no Religion but a meer Atheiſt, having no inclination to any thing of Godlineſs or whatſoever is termed Religion.*

[Dreams.]

4 *By what hath been ſpoken as to the Natives Religion,*

viz.

viz, the position of good Planets in the 9th, &c, It may also inform, concerne the truth or falsity of the Natives Dreams, for if the 9th house be fixed and fortunate as aforesaid, the Natives Dreams are generally pleasant, and the effects thereof correspondent: so that whatsoever his Dreams be they usually prove very true, or rarely fail.

But on the contrary if you finde the 9th house Afflicted by the presence of the Infortunes, or the Lord thereof with ♄, ♂, or ☋ in bad houses of the Figure, why then you may conclude the Natives Dreams to be terrible, and so hideous that he is (often times) much affrighted thereby, and whatsoever they be, shall come to nothing but prove altogether false and insignificant. This the more certain if the Signe of the 9th be movable.

Illustration by Example.

In the exemplary Geniture I finde ♈ upon the Cusp of the 9th, and ♂ Lord thereof in ♎ in the third (both movable Signes) and in ♂ of ☿; the ☽ beholds both those houses also, and but lately separated from a △ of ☿ which argues the Native may have a great inclination to Travail at some time of his Life, and the cause moving him thereunto may probably be, thinking to advantage and profit himself thereby in his publique practice, because ♂ is so near ☿ Lord of the second, and in △ to ♃ in the 6th, who hath dignity in the 9th, and in ✶ to the Cusp thereof, but by reason ♂ doth so much afflict the Lord of the second, and 3 Planets in ♐ to the 9th house I judge although he may have a great desire to Travail, yet he cannot be much enriched thereby, nor can he be any great loser neither, because ♃ who hath a triplicity in the 9th, (the Birth being Nocturnal) is in ✶ thereunto and in △ both to the Lord of the 9th and to the Lord of the second house. Now the Coast of the world that may be most Fortunate for the Native to travail unto should be West-

ward,

wards, because the Significators (as also most of the Planets) are in Aery Signes and ♅ who is much concerned herein is near the West Angle, and disposes of the ⊕, &c.

As for the Natives Religion finding the Lord of the Ascendent in the third, near *Spica* ♍, as also the Lord of the 9th there, with ☿, and both in △ to ♅, who hath dignities in the 9th, (as aforesaid) this prenotes him to be a Lover of Religion, and a person indued with more then barely the principles of Morality, &c. yet subject to waver therein, because the Cusps of the 9th and 3d, are movable Signes. [*For the forementioned reasons the Dreams of the Native should (for the most part) prove very true and Significant, as he hath often experienced.*]

SECTION IX.

Judgement proper to the 10th house of a Nativity

---

§ 1.

Shall the Native ever arrive to any considerable degree of Honour or Preferment in the World, &c.

---

1 THe *Significators of Preferment, Honour, or Profession of any Native is taken from the Cusp of the*

10th

10th, *Lord thereof, the Planet, or Planets, and fixed Stars posited therein, having well observed the strength of the significators, and how they behold the Ascendent or his Lord, you may from thence be able to judge of the above mentioned particulars appertaining to this house, &c.*

[Preferment.]

2 *If you finde the Significators aforesaid, well placed in the Figure. Essentially strong in any good Configuration of the Fortunes, this argues the Native shall attain to a very Considerable degree of Fortune and Advancement in the World, and this according to his capacity and degree of Birth (for this must* [in such cases] *alwayes be understood.*)

3 *But if the Significators be partly strong and partly weak, judge a medium, that the Native shall neither come to any great Advancement, or becom much Contemptible in the World, but live in a handsome mean way, never expecting to soar very high or be greatly dejected,* [I say, if you finde the Significators thus qualified, it plainly signifies a mediocrity in things of this nature, and accordingly order your judgement, as reason will prompt you.]

[No Preferment.]

4 *If you finde the Significators much debilitated, or afflicted, and Located in abject places of the Figure, this intimates the Native shall live in low esteem, and never come to Honour, (except upon the Effects of some good Direction of M. C. that may a little support* [more then ordinary] *for a time) but otherwise the Natives Credit and Reputation in the world remains obscure and generally continues at a very low ebb.*

5 Sol

☉ Sol or ♃ posited in the M. C. and well beholding the Ascendent or Lord thereof, or the ☽ denotes much Credit in the world, and that Honour shall be conferred upon the Native considerably. Yet if ♄ and ♂ or either of them behold them, or cast a malevolent Aspect unto the 10th house it denotes a Catastrophe of the Natives Dignity and Honour; and that he shall never Ascend so high, but he shall be brought down again with much Disgrace and Contempt.

[Note that the Dignity of the Native will be durable and of long continuance when the Significators thereof are Angular, and in their own Essential dignities, strong and potent, free from the malevolent Aspect of ♄ or ♂ or any way supported by the Benevolent Aspects of ♃ or ♀.]

Lastly, The persons or means by whom preferment shall come is Discovered from the Nature and Significations of the Significators themselves, as also those Planets they are in Configuration withal.

---

§ 2.
Of the Natives Trade, Magistery or Profession he may be most inclinable unto, or propense to follow.

---

1 the general Significators of Magistery are accounted by the Antients to be ♂, ☿, and ☿; ♂ declares the strength and ability of body, ☿ signifies the pleasure and delight any man hath in his profession, and ☿ denotes the Capacity and Understanding of the Native. Now if either of these happen to be Located in the 10th house or in any good Aspect to the Lord thereof, these may with

with more reason be accepted as Co-significators of the Natives Trade, (as a friend of mine well notes) otherwise they cannot have much to do therein. Therefore (as in all the other houses) take the Lord of the 10th, *or any Planet posited therein, and to be Significator of Trade, and according to his signification Judge.* [What Professions the Planets signifie you may read in the Introductory part hereof.]

§ 3.

Brief Rules which design the kinde of Trade.

1 Consider the Lord of the 10th, and Planets therein, observe also the Signes they are posited in, and the Trades appropriated to those Planets (concerned or) being rulers of the house of Trade, and accordingly Moderate your judgement, what kind of profession the Native may be propense unto.

2 If in movable Signes, they intimate Witty, Ingenious professions. if in humane Signes, such Trades as are more Noble, &c.

3 If the Significators be in Firy Signes, judge such Trades as are much conversant therein, and this the rather if the Planet that is Lord of the 10th sympathize therewith, *viz.* Smiths, Bakers, &c, And all kind of *Martial* and *Solar* professions.

4 If in Watry Signes, the Native will be inclinable to such kinde of professions, as Water-men, Saylors, Brewers, Vintiners, &c. and all kind of *Lunar* professions.

5 If

5 If in Aery Signes, it portends all kind of pleaſant delightful profeſſions, as Milliners, *Muſicianers*, *Painters*, &c. and all *Venerial* and *Mercurial* Imployments.

6. If in the earthy ſignes it denotes ſuch profeſſions that relate only to the earth, *viz.* all kinde of Husbandry, Digging, Sowing, *Planting*, &c. and all *Saturnine* vulgar profeſſions.

Laſtly, Theſe things being ſeriouſly inſpected into, will abundantly help to enlighten the judgement as to the Natives natural inclinations, in point of Magiſtery, Trade, or Profeſſion.

Aphoriſmes of Soveraignty, & contra.

1 The ☉ is the chief ſignificator of Honour, and Soveraignty, and being poſited in the *M. C.* in a Firy Signe, with ♃, ♀, or ♂ in his own houſe, declares that the Native ſhall undoubtedly attain to great Dignity and Honour, and come to bear rule in the world. The ſame if the 3 ſuperiours are ſtrong and potent, the one having great Dignities in the 10th houſe, the other in the Aſcendent.

2 That perſon born at Noon the ſame day the ☉ enters ♈ or ♌ ſhall aſſuredly mount to great Soveraignty and Dominion; or if ♃ in a Diurnal Geniture happen to be poſited in the 10th houſe in △ to ☉ judge the ſame.

3 The ☽ Denotes Soveraignty by being placed in her Exaltation in ♂ ♀, or in her own houſe in ♂ of ♃, and this more eſpecially if placed in the 10th houſe; the ſame if ſhe behold ☉ or ♃ by a △ Aſpect, and be with Kingly fixed Stars,

4 The

4 The ☉ ♃ and ♂ in △ from Firy Signes, or ☉ ♃ and ♀ joyned to regal fixed ſtars of the firſt Magnitude do declare the Native ſhall be preferred to a very conſiderable height of Honour and Soveraignty in the world. *Quoad Capax.*

5 *Saturn* in the 10th, or in ♌ thereunto, and the Lord of the 10 in a Firy Signe, conjoyned with ♂, this denotes that Native though arrived to a very high pitch of honour ſhall be brought to a fatal end.

6 If ♄ or ☽ ſhall be in □ or ☍ to the Lord of the 10th, or the ☉, it ſignifies that perſon then born ſhall be ſtrangely Ruined and come to nothing, by vulgar Ruſticks, and ſuch as were abundantly beneath him, as much as the dignity of a King tranſcends that of a Beggar.

Illuſtration by Example.

In the Nativity propoſed, ♀ *is Lady of the* 10th, *in her detriment in* ♏, *and ſufficiently afflicted by the hateful* ☍ *of* ♄. Cauda Draconis *is near the Cuſp of the* M.C. *unto both which* ♃ *ſends a Quartil Aſpect, and the* ☉ *a general ſignificator, the weakeſt Planet in the Scheam: All theſe are Teſtimonies that the Natives Honour ſhould be ſtrangely Clouded, and his Reputation ſubject to Scandal; unto which I may add, there is alſo a violent Fixed Star, viz.* Oculus Tauri *poſited in the houſe of Preferment, which being of the nature of* ♂ *doth rather augment then abate the former Signification, but the* ☽ *being exalted in the* 10th, *and in* △ *to the* ☉ *doth much mitigate the Evil. This is our Natives unhappy fate, that notwithſtanding all his Deſerts, his Fame hath not yet been ſpread ſo abroad as many other perſons (far ſhort in skill, as to many curious Manual Operations) have been, neither can any ſuch things be at the preſent expected.*

[But

But when the M. C. *meets with the* △ *of* ♀ *in* ♊ *it will doubtless operate more or less, so that the Native will then be more known and taken notice of, Yet the effects of that Direction will not (I fear) be so remarkable to the Native as naturally such a direction portends.*

1 *Because the promittor beholds the Significator by a* □ *Aspect.* 2. *Because* ☽ *is so near the* M. C. 3 *Because it falls in* ♊ *the detriment of* ♀. *And* Lastly, *Because* ♀ *is Lord of the* 8*th, and not essentially strong; perhaps some kind of Legacy may then happen, &c.* [But here I have somewhat digressed.]

The Natives profession in Physick and Chirurgery (as I have often hinted) is not well denoted by ☿ *Lady of the* 10*th in* ♍ *an earthy Signe, and in* ☌ *to* ♄ *a Planet of the same Nature, who is in* ✶ *to the Cusp of the* 10*th* ♉, *an Earthy Signe also, which might rather signifies the Natives inclination to a profession of that kinde &c. He doth acknowledge he once had a propensity to Grafing, &c which is well signified thereby. But the* ☽ *being Dignified in the* 10*th house, and lately separated from a* △ *of* ♂ *who is in* ♌ *with* ☿, *and the* ☉ *who is* Dominus Ascendentis *just separated from the* ☌ *of* ♂ *who is disposed of by* ☿ *Lady of the* 10*th, and a fixed star of the first Magnitude of the nature of* ♂ *posited in the* 10*th. also most of the Planets in Aery Signes; This plainly intimates the Native should delight rather in such a kind of profession signified by* ♂, *viz Chirurgery, &c.* The professions signified by ♂ you may read, *page* 25. of the Introduction part.

SECTION X.

Judgement upon the 11*th houſe of any Nativity*

§ 1,

Shall the Native finde friends? (*viz*, unrelated. &c.)

1 IF you finde the Cuſp of the 11*th*, or Lord thereof, well fortified or Benevolent Planets poſited therein, or well beholding it, this argues the Native ſhall finde faithful friends, and ſuch as he may confidently impoſe truſt in. The Contrary is eaſily diſcovered by what hath been ſaid before, &c.

2 *If good and bad Planets are poſited in the* 11*th houſe or are in Aſpect unto it, or the Lord thereof; judge the Native ſhall have friends of two ſorts, ſome real others pretenders, and if ſo be they behold the Lord of the* 11*th by* □ *or* ☍, *it intimates a ſcarcity of Friends, and thoſe few that are, to be very mutable perſons. Unconſtant, Falſe, Perfidious, and by no means not be truſted unto, as having no real Love for the Native.*

3 *If by any means the Genitures of both perſons can be procured, you may eaſily diſcover their Friendſhip whether*

whether it be Real or the Contrary, by comparing them together, thus, viz.

If in your Friends Nativity you finde the ☉ or ☽, or Aſcendent in ✶ or △, to their places in the Natives Geniture, or if the 11th houſe in the one be the Aſcendent in the other, or the contrary; Theſe are arguments of Friendſhip, The ſame judge if the Lord of the Aſcendent and 11th houſe in each others Geniture be in ✶ or △, or Planets that are naturally Friends, if none of theſe things be, but inſteaſt of ✶s and △s you finde □s and ☍s, &c. You may conclude the contrary, becauſe you finde a diſagreement, &c. This is according to Ptolomyes Rule Centilop; Aphr, 33.

§ 2.
Aphoriſmes to be obſerved relating to Friendſhip, &c.

1 *Contrary to the minde of ſome Authors. if ♋ be Horoſcopial the Native rarely procures Friends; and this the rather if the ☽ be weak or afflicted, or if ☿ be in ♂ of ♃ in ♍. (or ♀ in ♏) judge the ſame.*

2 *All the Planets above the Earth, and the Lord of the Aſcendent in good Aſpect with the ſuperiours, they being ſtrong and potent, or the Light of the time above the Earth, and in any good Aſpect of ♄, ♃, or ♂, being Eſſentilly dignified are eminent Teſtimonies of friendſhip, &c. The ſame if many Planets are in Reception, or friendly beholding the Aſcendent.*

3 *The ☽ or Lord of the Aſcendent in Aſpect with many Planets, or many Planets Located in the 1ſt, or*

11th houſes ſignifies the Native ſhall meet with diverſity of friends.

If ♃ or ♀ do both behold the Aſcendent, or his Lord or the 11th, &c. It denotes many Faithful, Honeſt Friends; Or if ♃ and ♀ be Located in the 11th houſe or in the 5th, 10th, 7th, or 9th, houſes, this denotes the Native ſhall enjoy many eminent and worthy Friends, and ſuch as will aſſiſt him in his greateſt extremity.

Illuſtration by Example.

In the Geniture there is no Planet poſited in the 11th houſe, but the ☉ and ☽ are in △ to the Cuſp thereof, and ☿ Lord of the 11th in ☌ of ♂, and hasting to a ☌ of the ☉ alſo, therefore the Native ſhould have ſome Friends, although he cannot expect to be much bettered by them, for their Significator is much afflicted; and as he is Lord of the Natives ſecond, it doth intimate that the Native may receive dammage by expence upon (or with ſuch *Mercurial Friends*, which in the end will prove but fickle and unconſtant; (for ☿ is poſited in a movable Signe) and therefore ſuch Friends not much to be confided in, or truſted unto.

Yet ☿ being in Reception of ♀, and ♄ in Reception of ♃, alſo the ☽ in △ to the ☉, &c. This argues Another ſort of friends, and the rather becauſe the Luminaries behold the houſe of friendſhip by a △, ſo that the Native will finde mixt Friends; Some that pretend friendſhip for their own ſelf ends, and By-reſpects; others will prove more real, and ſuch as he may confide in, and finde truly Honeſt.

Sect.

SECTION XI.

Judgement upon the 12th houſe.

§ 1.
Of the Natives Private Enemies, &c.

1 *OBſerve the Lord of the 12th houſe, and Aſcendent, alſo the Planet or Planets poſited in the 12th, and their Configuration with the Lord of the Aſcendent, and thence judge the Qualities and Conditions of the private Enemies of the Native,*

2 *Many Planets ill diſpoſed in the 12th houſe, Intimates many Treacherous enemies, unknown to the Native. But if they are Eſſentially Dignified there, they denote private Enemies, but of more Nobler Spirits, and ſuch perſons more able to vend their mallice againſt the Native.*

3 *The Lord of the Aſcendent in the 12th, or Lord of the 12th in the Aſcendent, denotes that the Native ſhall have diverſe ſecret Adverſaries, of whom he ought to be exceeding careful, for he ſhall receive much prejudice by their means, But if no Planet be poſited in the 12th houſe, or there be a Benevolent Aſpect between the Lord of the 12th and the Lord of the Aſcendent, this argues the Native ſhall have none, or at leaſt ſo few that he will be ſencible of no Injury from them.*

4 *If the Lord of the 12th be in ☌ of ☿ and the ☽ in the 7th house, it argues the Native shall be perplexed continually with a company of Inveterate Malicious Adversaries, and this the more certain if they behold the Lord of the Ascendent by any ill Aspect; What Relation, or what kind of persons these shall be, are most easily known by considering the nature of their Significators and the houses they govern.*

5 *Lastly, If you finde the Lord of the 12th stronger and better fortified then the Lord of the Ascendent, the Natives Enemies will overcome, But on the contrary if the Lord of the Asdendent be strongest the Native will prevail over his private Enemies.*

---

§ 2.
Of the Imprisonment, or Restraint of the Native.

---

1 *If you finde the Infortunes in □ or ☍ to the ☉ or ☽ in Signes of a violent Nature, and posited in the 7th or 12th houses, this prenotes that the Native will be very subject to suffer by Imprisonment and Captivity; judge the same if the ☉ or ☽ are posited in the 12th, or in ☍ to the Lord of the Ascendent in the 6th house, or if you finde the Infortunes or the ☽ in the 4th it declares the same, and so doth ♂ and ♀ in the 8th in □ or ☍ of the Infortunate Planet ♄.*

2 *☿ and ☽ posited in the 12th house signifies the Native shall be well acquainted with Imprisonment And if ♄ be in ☍ to the ☉ or ☽ and posited in the 7th house, This denotes the Native shall end his dayes in Prison.*

3 ☉

3 ☉, ♄ *and* ☿ *poſited in the 10th houſe and in evil Aſpect of* ♂ *argues the Native will be guilty of Robbery and ſometimes Murther, and conſequently Impriſonment, and in the end death by the Law.*

4 Laſtly *When the Significators of impriſonment are Located in fixed Signes this intimates long and tedious Captivity and Reſtraint But if the Benevolent Planets Interpoſe their friendly Raye, and behold well the ſeveral Significators it intimates the Native will gain his liberty by the means of ſuch perſons ſignified by them.*

The Premiſes being well conſidered, 'tis no matter of difficulty to judge concerning the Native's ſucceſs in great Cattle as Horſes, Cows, Oxen, &c, or the contrary.

Example.

In the Exemplary Nativity the ☽ is the Lady of the 12th and in ♂ to the Aſcendent, therefore the Nativ ſhould have ſome private Enemies, and thoſe more powerful then himſelf; for the ☽ is *Almuten* and the ☉ ſufficiently weak. But I conclude they will not much prejudice him becauſe the Luminaries are in △ Aſpect; neither needs he fear Impriſonment for the very ſame reaſons. Unto which I may add, If he happen to deal in Great Cattle he ſhall loſe as much or rather more then profit thereby, becauſe ♄ the diſpoſiter of the ☽ afflicts the 2d houſe and ♀ alſo, poſited near the Cuſp of the ſame, however, I ſay the Native needs not fear prejudice to his perſon, neither from publique or private enemies for the aforelaid reaſons Neither ſhould there be any great correſpondency between thoſe his Enemies becauſe their Significators ♄ and the ☽ are by Aſtrologers termed Enemies and their houſes oppoſite, &c.

SECTION. XII.

Judgement proper to the 8th house. &c.

§ 1

Shall the Natives death be Natural or Violent?

1 IF the Lord of the Ascendent or the ☽ be in good Aspect, *viz* ✶ or △ with the Lord of the 4th or 8th, this (according to the Rules of Astrology) Indicates a Natural Death. Judge the same if the Fortunes be Located in the 8th house, or if they are weake there, provided they are in ✶ or △ to the Lord of the Ascendent, or the ☽ it prenotes no less.

If either the Lord of the Horoscope or the ☽ or Lord of the 8th be posited in Violent Signes, or near Violent Fixed Stars, the Native needs not greatly fear a Violent Death.

2 If the Lord of the 8th, or Planets in the 8th house be strong and fortified Essentially it argues he shall dye a very easie Death, and drop away Insencibly.

3 The ☉ or ♂ Lord of the 8th, and posited therein in ♋, ♏, or ♓, it signifies the Native shall Expire by a disease occasioned by a Superabounding of Hot and Moist humours; so ☿ Lord of the 8th in □ or ☍ of ♄ shews the Native shall dye of a very potent Melancholly; But

♂ being the afflicting Planet threatens Death by a *Vertigo*, or *Megrim* in the Brain, &c.

4 If ♀ be Lady of the 8th and afflicted by ♂ bidds the Native beware of death occasioned by a Venerial Distemper, viz. *Gonorrhœa*, or *Morbus Gallicus*, *&c.* But if ♄ afflict ♀ it threatens a *Leprosie*, *Iliac Passion*, *Black Jaundice*, *&c.*

[*Violent Death.*]

1 The ☉ or ☽ evilly beholding from Angles or otherwise afflicted by the Infortunes, this signifies a Violent Death, and this the rather if ♄ or ♂ bear rule in the house of Death; The same if the ☉ or ☽ are posited near violent fixed Stars or in Violent Signes and in no *Aspect* together.

2 The Infortunes Conjoyned in the *M. C.* or in ♌ from *Angles* and posited in Violent Signes presages a Violent Death; The same if the Lord of the *Ascendent* be posited in the 8th in a violent Signe, or with violent fixed Stars; or otherwise afflicted by ♄ or ♂, or if the Lord of the 8th be weak in the *Ascendent* in such Signes or with such Stars; these are strong Testimonies (in *Art*) the Native shall dye a Death unnatural.

3 The kinds of Violent Death that a man may dye are somewhat scrupulus and nice points absolutely to determine, but *Astrologers* have given divers Rules for the knowledge of the same; as, *Guido*, *Bonatus*, *Origanus*, *Albubatur*, *Schoner* and others; unto which I refer those that *desire to be further satisfied in this point and all the other*; or to Mr, *Lill.* or Mr, *Gad.* works, who are copious in this matter

But an *Artist* may nearly guess at the kinde of Violent Death, by a due consideration of the nature of the afflicting Planet and Signes they are in; and so judge whether the

Native may expire by Drowning, Hanging, Killing, Beheading, or by Falls from High.

[*Annarreta what?*]

4 In the first House you are shewed how to finde the giver of Life, and here it will be necessary how to finde the Insufficient or Killing Planet, vulgarly called *Annarreta* and *That is the Lord of the 8th, or a Planet posited therein, or that hath great dignities in the 8th house.*

Now when the giver of Life is directed to the ☌, □, or ☍ of the *Annarreta*, this is accounted Mortal, and the rather if he happen to be ♄ or ♂ and contrary in nature to the *Hyleg*; the same may be understood if either of the Luminaries be so directed, notwithstanding they neither of them be propagator of Life.

5 Or when the *Ascendent* or either of the Lights be directed to any of the Malevolent *Aspects* of ♄ or ♂ especially having dignities in the house of Death and contrary in nature to the Signe *Ascending* or place where the Direction falls being much debilitated here; this hath been often experienced to cut asunder the thread of Life. And it rarely fails to prove fatal to the Native unless there happen another Direction at the same time to mitigate it, or the Revolution and Transits contradict it, to which I may add if the Fortunes beheld the place of the Direction Radically, or at the present time by transit, these things indeed might mitigate the force of a Killing Direction, and so the Native may possibly escape at that time.

Note that it is dangerous for the Ascendent to be directed to the ☌ of the ☉ or ☽ or the Luminaries to the □ or ☍ of each other, having respect how the Direction falls as before hinted.

Example

Example.

In the Geniture proposed I finde ♃ *to be Lord of the* 8*th and although* ♄ *be near the Cusp thereof, yet* ♃ *hath most dignities in the house of Death, Ergo, must be accepted for Anarrea; ♃ is in* □ *to the* ☉ *Lord of the Ascendent (within their Orbs) and in* ☌ *to the Signe Ascending, therefore he ought to beware of a Violent Death but the Native I judge will dye a Natural Death, because the Significators are not posited near Violent fixed Stars, nor in Signes termed Violent as,* ♉ ♌, ♐. *&c But chiefly because the Luminaries are in friendly* △, *and the* ☉ *Lord of the Ascendent separated from the* ☌ *of* ♂ *Lord of the 4th and the Lord of the 8th being a Fortune, and therefore denotes Natural Death, &c.*

Thus much for the judgement of the 8th house, and also for a conclusion of the judgement upon the 12 houses of a Nativity.

Here I have briefly (yet fully) shewed the way and manner of judging a Nativity according to the Canons of Astrology; the Antients indeed have largely written upon this subject, and from them (in a more succinct method) our Modern Authors, but my endeavour hath been only to contract the most significant Judgements proper thereunto, and as it were Epitomize and digest it into so brief, plain and familiar a method, that any person though but meanly read in things of this nature, may from thence be enabled to give a rational judgement upon any Nativity whatsoever.

Before

Before I come to treat of Directions I thought convenient here to incert theſe propoſals therein, which I had long ſince from a loving Friend, and ſingular Mathematician, and ſo leave them to the conſideration and ſcanning of the Sons of Art.

1 *'Tis probable that the Antient Aſtrologers by what they termed Directions upon Nativities, intended thereby ſome poſition or Configuration of the Heavens, happening within ſome certain dayes after the ſame, to ſignifie Accidents, good, or evil to the Native at the end of ſo many Years.*

2 *And probably the Directions of the ☉ and ☽ only their applications to the Bodies and Aſpects of the other Planets and fixed Stars, every dayes diſtance in time, from the Birth to the ſaid Aſpects giving one year, and every two hours one moneth*

3 *The Direction of the M. C. being the dayes elapſed from the Radix till the Bodies or Aſpects of ſome of the Planets do culminate at the ſame hour of the day, or point of time with the Nativity.*

4 *And conſequently the direction of the Aſcendent, the dayes elapſed from the Nativity, till ſome Promittor aſcendeth the Horizon at the ſame time of the day agreeable with the Radix.*

Thus ſuppoſe the ☉ in ſome Nativity ſhould Culminate in 0 deg. *of* ♈, *and* ♀ *ſhould be poſited in* 0 deg. *of* ♉, *now the common Arch of direction would be near* 28 deg. *but the ☉ will not come to that point till more then* 30 *days ſhewing the Accident to happen at the end of* 30 *years.* [There is a meaſure of time mentioned in this Book, which agrees to this method of direction, unto which *J. Keplars* is equivolent.]

CHAP.

CHAPTER. VII.

Of Directions.

SECTION I.

What a Direction is and how it is defined? As also, Which is called the Significator, and which the promissor, &c?

A Direction(or rather a Deduction) is defined by *Argol* to be the Arch of the Æquator, intercepted between two places in the Heavens, *viz.* The Artificial measure of its progress, which the Promissor doth absolve by the motion of the *Primum Mobile*, or to Direct, is to finde what degrees of the Æquator pass through the Meridian, while the Promissor (or place inferiour) by the aforesaid Motion comes to the point of the Significator, (or place superiour) *i, e,* Until the Promissor comes to the very Semicircle of position of the Significator, which is vulgarly said to be Directed; this motion in Directions is real and no way feigned. Hence then that motion of rising, wheeling, or turning about of the Promissor to the place of the Significator, by the swift motion of the *Primum Mobile*, which is from the East to the West, is really absolute, and produces its effects according to the distance of the degrees of the Æquator, between the Significator and Promissor giving

giving for every degree a certain ſpace of time, allowed by experience, *viz.* about a year, &c. of which in its proper place.

2 Others (and in particular one very learned in *Aſtronomy*) defines directions to be the harmony of the Earths annual and diurnal Revolutions about the ☉, And Profections (if any thing) are defined to be the harmony of the Moons menſural and diurnal Revolutions about the Earth, from this ground *Keplars* method of Directions is termed a moſt demonſtrative way, which in the cloſure of this book I ſhall endeavour to make plain and eaſie. Yet *Argols* method is now generally received and practiſed by all Aſtrologers of *Europe*, and is the ſame in effect with *Regiomontanus*, the which hath been followed by many learned Aſtronomers and Mathematicians, as *Johannes Keplerus*, *Tycho*, the *Danian School*, *Johannes Antonius*, *Maginus* and others, as is atteſted by that great maſter of Aſtronomy, viz, *Andreas Argol* himſelf, who hath taken much pains in this kind, being a profeſſor as he ſaith for above fifty years, and never found the leaſt Scruple whereby he might be enforc't to alter his judgement, being well ſatisfied that this ſubject is built upon a true and ſure foundation, and grounded upon Mathematical reaſons and demonſtrations.

3 By a Significator you are to underſtand any Planet or place of the Ecliptick, that may ſignifie any matter, or thing in the Heavens about the affection of the body of the Native; as, Life, Manners of the Minde, Preferment, Fortune and any other thing inwardly or outwardly happening thereunto; For which *Ptolomy* aſſigned the Aſcendent, Mid-heaven, ☉, ☽, and ⊕. theſe five are termed *Hyligyacals* and Significators, by whoſe directions all accidents, as well proſperous as unfortunate are pointed out, as their Significators meet with the Bodys, or Aſpects of

of benevolent or malevolent Stars or Planets. This opinion is generally followed, others have added the rest of the Planets ♄, ♅, ♂, ♀, and ☿ for Significators also, and may discern good or evil in those things that are signified by them, as also the Cusps of the Cœlestial houses, according to their several significations; as the second house for Riches, the seventh for Marriage, &c. And so of the rest.

4 The Promissor (or Promittor) is that point of the Ecliptick where either the Body or Asp ☌ of any Star or Planet that are said to be Directed unto, (or rather brought to the place of the Significator, as before noted) which may discern or promise anything to the Native either good or evil, denoted by the Significator.

5 There is another sort of Direction, which by Astrologers is termed Converse, or Retrograde, that is to bring the Significator to the Promissor, which is contrary to the motion of the *Primum Mobil*, and by *Argol* utterly abolish as feigned and without a foundation. But Converse Direction taken in the right sence, is nothing discrepant from Direct Direction, as is testified by *Carol. Antonius, Manginus* in his *Nova Dirigendi Ars*, Printed 1626,) But only in taking the Poles elevation above the Circle of position. For as in Direct Directions you are to take the Circle of position, (as it is vulgarly termed) of the Significator, and so direct the Promissor under that Pole. So here in Converse Directions you are to take the Circle of position of the Promissor only and not the Significator, and under that Pole finde the Ascension or Descension of the Significator, and substract the Oblique Ascension or Descension of the Promissor from the Oblique Ascension or Descension of the Significator, *&c.* and the difference is the Ark of direction required.

Example,

Example.

Suppose the Ascendent of some Nativity were 2 *deg.* ♎ *and the* △ *of* ♃ *fall in* 5 *deg.* 10′ *of* ♏ *in the* 12*th* (*this is contrary to the succession of the Signes*) *and I would know when the Ascendent or Horoscope came to the said Aspect of* ♃. *Now I find the Pole of position of* △ ♃ *to be* 46 *d.* 2′, *I take the Oblique Ascension of the Horescope under that Pole, which is* 183 *d.* 24′, *from which I deduct the Oblique Ascension of the* △ *of* ♃ 147 *d.* 21′, *and there remains the Arke of direction required* 36 *d.* 3′ *so that here you may observe that the Ascendent which is Significator is brought to the Promissor still according to the motion of the* Primum Mobile, *and the Pole of position taken at every direction, which in the direct way is taken but once, and hence the difference between Direct and Converse is plainly laid open, and discovered, I suppose if it were practised, (which indeed is very laborious) it would be found as significant as the former, since 'tis in effect but the same thing. But this I leave to the consideration of the more able Artists, who are competent Judges in such Cases.*

SECTION. II.

Of the Latitude of the Planets to be considered in Directions.

THere hath been much dispute amongst Authors concerning this very point, occasioned (as is supposed) by the false interpretations of *Ptolomy's* writings, but all that

that are skilful in Mathematical Demonstrations, do unanimously agree that the Latitude of the Planets in Directions ought every where to be observed. For every one that is but meanly versed in these matters may easily apprehend that the stars do unequally arise with and without Latitude, so in these Northren Countreys that have Oblique Horizons where the North Pole is elevated, 'tis apparent that a Star with North Latitude riseth sooner, and sets later then the place of the Ecliptique, and contrarily, those Stars having South Latitude, rise later, and set sooner then the place of the Ecliptique they are in, this is very easy discovered by the Globe or Sphear, or by any Tables of Oblique Ascension with Latitude, As in the Latitude of *London*, the Oblique Ascension of 10 degrees of ♈ Sine La. is 4 *deg.* 10′, but with 1 *deg.* of North Latitude 'tis 2 *deg.* 36′ agrees to about 6 *deg.* of ♈, and with 1 *deg.* of South Latitude the Oblique Ascension is 5 *deg.* 43′, which agreet to almost 14 *deg* of ♈; By which it is plain that a Planet with South Latitude ariseth farther in the Signe then the place of the Ecliptique he is in, and having North Latitude the contrary; and by consequence the Ark of Direction either increased or diminished by reason of the Planets Latitude North, or South; this needs no more words to explain it, being a business so obvious. Only note this by the way, That notwithstanding North Latitude diminisheth the Oblique Ascension and South Latitude augmenteth it, yet you are to understand the contrary in their Oblique Descensions; For as much as North Latitude makes the Oblique Ascension lesser then the degr. of the Ecliptique, so much the Oblique Descension will be greater, and so much as South Latitude increaseth the Oblique Ascension so much it decreaseth the Oblique descension less then the degrees of the Ecliptique [*I have said the more in this particular to explain the business to Tyro's.*]

The premiſes conſidered, then the Latitude ought undoubtedly to be obſerved in Directions; *Origanus* contends for an Æquation of the Stars Latitude in his Aſpects, to be made in the Longitude. But *Blanchinus* and *Argol* will have their Latitude Æquated in the Aſpects only. Others would have the Stars Latitude Æquated, both in their Longitude and Aſpects too; But, if you direct only to the Aſpects of the Planets which never have much Latitude, (neglecting the Aſpects of the fixed Stars, as all modern Aſtrologers do, except *Hartgil*) there needs no Æquation in the Longitude For the ✶ or △ Aſpect, at 8 deg of Latitude (which is the moſt the Planets have) alters but 14′ in the Longitude; which is inconſiderable, conſidering the uncertainty of the Planets places in ſome Ephemerides; Therefore to Æquate the Aſpects onely according to *Argol* is altogether ſufficient, neglecting the Longitude Æquation, unleſs you direct to the Aſpects of fixed Stars that have great Latitude, then indeed the Longitude will be altered conſiderably, as will appear by the following proportions

Now the Reaſon why *Argol* gives that ſhort Rule in his *Primum Mobile*, (the premiſes conſidered) is becauſe that in ſo ſmall angles, *viz.* 30 degrees from the acute angle (*i. e.* the ✶ or △ Aſpect from the □) the perpendicular is near half the ſaid angle, and becauſe the ſides including ſo ſmall angles are almoſt the ſame, therefore *Argol* and others take half the Latitude in the ✶ and △, and the ſide 60 degrees in the Ecliptique, although not exactly ſo, yet the difference is inconſiderable, as appears by this following Example, *viz.*

Firſt

First for the Æquation of the Longitude.

As the Radius to the Tangent of the Aſpects diſtance from the □, *viz.* 30 *degrees.*	976144
So the Co-Sine of the Latitude in the ☌ *which is never above* 8 *deg. in the Planets.*	999575
To the Tangent of the Aſpects Longitude from the Square 29 *deg.* 46′.	975719

For the Latitude.

As the Radius to the Sine of the Aſpect from the □ 30 *deg.*	969897
So the Sine of the Lat. at the ☌ 8 *deg.* 0′	914356
To the Sine of the Lat. at the Aſpect 3 *d.* 59′.	884253

Thus 'tis apparent that if a Planet hath 8 degrees of Latitude, in the Conjunction he hath but 14′ difference in the ✶ or △, which is not conſiderable for the reaſons before hinted, and a Planet that hath the ſame Latitude in the ☌, in the ✶ or △, will be but half, within leſs then one minute. Therefore we may uſe *Argols* method in the Æquation of the Planets Aſpects, *Viz.* the □ terminates in the Ecliptique, and therefore hath no Latitude, the ☍ the ſame Latitude, but of the contrary denomination, as in the ☌; But in a △ or ✶, take half the Latitude (as before proved) the ✶ of the ſame, and the △ of the contrary denomination, of the Latitude in the ☌. To this Æquation *Argol* ſubſcribes as agreeing with obſervations in above 1000 Genitures (as he ſaith) and with him many more Aſtronomers, and ſo lays aſide the Æquations of *Regiomontanus* and others as void of

Mathematical Demonstrations; Those that have a minde to Æquate the Longitude of the Planets also, as well as their Aspects, may make use of this short Table following.

A Table of the Æquation of the Longitude and Latit. of the Planets Aspects according to Blanchinus *and* Argol.

Pla.	Lat.	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII
☉ ☽	Lat	☽ 52	1 42	2 36	3 28	4 20	5 11	6 3	6 56
☌	Æq	☽ 0	☽ 1	☽ 2	☽ 4	☽ 6	☽ 8	☽ 11	☽ 14
⚹	Lat	☽ 30	1 0	1 30	2 0	2 30	3 0	3 30	0
△	Æq.	☽ 30	☽ 1	☽ 2	☽ 4	☽ 6	☽ 8	☽ 11	☽ 14

Note that the 2d and 4th lines in the Table is the Æquation of Lat. and the third and last the Æqu. of Longitude.

The Æquation of the *Semi* Sextile and the *Quin Cunx* are the same because they are both equally distant (*viz.* 60 *deg.*) from the □, So likewise is the Æquation of the ⚹ and △, the same being equally distant 30 *d.* from the □, and this is to be understood both in Longitude and Latitude; The Æquation of the Aspects are to be used as before directed: But for the Æquation of the Longitude of the Planets, take this Rule.

In the { ⚹ *Sinister*, & △ *Dexter* } *add*; ⚹ *Dexter* & △ *Sinister* } *subst* the æquation { *to* / *from* } *the given Longitude.*

Understand the same in the *Semi Sextile* and *Quincunx* (if you have a desire to Direct to those Aspects).

Thus the Aspects in Directions are Æquated, and the Planets Longitude also, if any please to use it. This method

thod is now generally received, and approved of by moſt modern Aſtrologers; yet there are ſome particular perſons, and thoſe very able Artiſts, and skilful Mathematicians that are not well ſatisfied herein. Amongſt whom the learned *Morinus* in his *Aſtrologia Gallica* doth largely diſcourſe, and thinks it abſurd to account a Planets Aſpect that hath Latitude in two Circles. But my ingenious friend Mr. *John Eyres* [*a perſon well verſed in Aſtronomy, as alſo in all parts of the Mathematicks*] hath made a large progreſs and diligent ſearch into this ſubject, being put upon it chiefly, becauſe that in Rectification and after Directions, in diverſe Genitures the Accidents and Directions did not ſo nearly agree together as was Expected; and this (many times) when neither contrary Directions, Revolution, or Profections did either haſten or retard the ſame.

A ſecond Motive was, he conſidered that moſt other wayes had been tryed before, and did not anſwer expectation as he ſuppoſed, neither was this way of his ever aſſayed by any (as he could underſtand) before, for *Morinus* (whoſe method doubtleſs had its firſt conception from the ſame foundation) was not then extant.

A third Motive that put him on ſcrutiny in this caſe, was this conſideration, that the reaſons of the difference of the Dexter and Siniſter Aſpects; is becauſe the Planets in the one doth dart and direct his Beams forward, and in the other relinquiſh and draw them after him, and therefore he concluded the Rays were principally in their Orbits (or way wherein the Planets continually make their Revolution.

Here follows his way of operation in five Propoſitions (with their Mathematical demonſtrations,) How to take the Planets Latitudes in their Aſpects, performed by the *Caroline* Tables; which I thought convenient to communicate to the true Sons of *Urania*.

Prop. 1

Substract the place of the Aspect from the place of the ☉, *and the remainer call the Elongation.*

Prop. 2,

Substract the præcession of the Æquinoctial at the time of the Nativity, from the place of the Aspect, so have you the place of the Sydereal Longitude thereof, with which in the Tables take out the Correspondent Logarithme Distance from the ☉.

Prop. 3,

To the Complement Arithmetical, of which Logarithm add the Logarithm distance of the Earth from the ☉ *at Birth, and the Sine of the Elongation, taken by the first Proposition, and the Summ will be the Sine of the* Prostaphæresis, *which,*

When the Elongation is { *more* / *less* } *then 6 Signes* { *add.* / *substract.*

to or from the Sydereal Longitude of the Aspects, and with the Summ, or Remainer, enter the Table again, and thereby take out the Correct Logar. distance from the ☉, *wherewith Iterate your third operation again, and the Results will be the Correct* Prostaphæresis, *which again add, or substract, to, or from the mean Sydereal Longitude of the Aspect according to the former Rule; and the summ or difference will be the Excentrique Distance, wherewith in the Tables take out and reserve the inclination of the Orbe,*

Prop. 4.

Add or substract this Correct Prostaphæresis, to, or from

from the Elongation, contrary to the former Rule, viz. if more then 6 Signes ſubſtract, if leſs add, and you will have the Anomaly Orbe.

Prop. 5.

Then Reaſon thus, viz.

As the Sine of the Anomaly Orbe is to the Sine of the Elongation; So the Tangent of the Inclination to the Tangent of the Latitude ſought.

Illuſtration by Example.

In a certain Nativity ♂ was in ♍ 13 deg 20′ his □ Aſpect falls in 13 d, 20′ ♒, and at that time the preceſſion of the Æquinoctial was 27 d, 52′, and the ☉ in 26 d. 56′ ♋.

1				2		
Logar. diſt. ☉	5006962				S, d	′
Long. ☉	1 S. 26d, 56′		Long. Aſpect	10	13	20
Long. Aſpect	10	13	20 ſubſt.	Præceſ. ſubſt.	0	27	52
Elongation	05	13	36		9	15	28

Logar. diſt. from the ☉ correſpondent, 5141867

3

As the diſtance of ♂ from the ☉ in that Longit. Com. Arith.	4858133	add,
To the diſtance of the Earth from the ☉ at Birth.	5006962	
So the Sine of the mean Elongation 5 S, 13 deg. 36′	9450775	
To the ſine of the mean Proſt 11 d, 57′	9315870	

 which

which substracted according to the third Proposition there will remain 9 S. 3 d. 31′ the Sydereal Longitude first Corrected, and the distance from the ☉ 5144727

The Logar. 5144727 Com *Ar.* is	4855273	
The Logar. distance from the ☉	5006952	add
Sine of 55. 13°. 36′ is	9410775	

Sine of the Cor. Prost 11 d 52′ is 9313010

Which again substracted there will remain 9 S. 3 deg. 36′ the Sydereal Longitude Correct, and the Inclination against the same is, 1 d. 48′.

4

But contrariwise, if you add this Correct Prostaphæresis to the Elongation you will have the *Anomaly Orbe* 5 S. 25 d. 28′.

5

The Sine thereof Comp. *Arith.*	1.02116	
Elongation Sine thereof,	9459077	add,
Tangent of Inclination 1 d. 48′	8499729	
Tang. of the Lat. South 6 d. 24′	9050922	

Let this way be made use of in such Geniturs that the Births are certainly known, (or very nearly) and Directions will not agree the old way; this Operation may be thought tedious by some But note, that the second Work for the Correct Prostaphæresis may be omitted in ♄ and ♃ for in those Planets the difference is but small, and there needs no proportion to be made for the Logar. Dist.

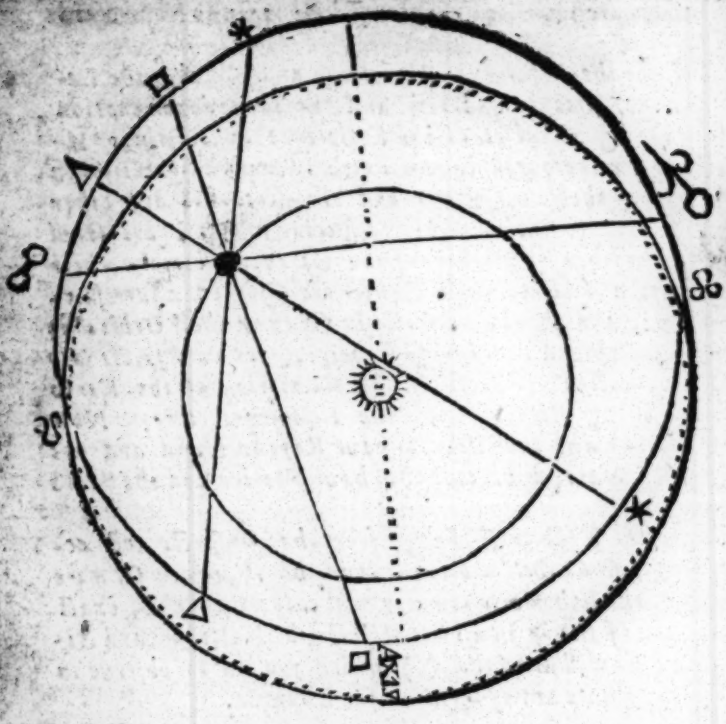
Diſtance from the ☉, nor for the Inclination, but take it at the neareſt whole degrees as is done in the aforeſaid Example

But for the Inferiour Planets ♀ and ☿ take the Latitude the ſame in quantity and the ſame denomination as in the ☌ parrallel to the Ecliptique in all their Aſpects (for there will be an extraordinary diſparity in conferring their directions and the accidents any other way) becauſe their Orbs (eſpecially ☿s) are ſmall and far within the Orbit of the Earth, and make their Revolution (about their Center the ☉) in a farr ſhorter time, and ſhould Aſpects be taken in their Orbits it would be abſurd. Therefore their Rayes or Aſpects are chiefly directed, or remitted by the motion of the Earth or ☉, being alwayes upon the Ecliptique line. Now the reaſons why the Planets have Rayes allowed and not the fixed Stars, is becauſe they have Motion and the Stars none

For the ☽ ſubſtract the ☊ from the Aſpect, and accordingly finde the Latitude, as in the ☌, &c. Or more eaſily by the Ephemeris you may moſt readily finde the exact Latitude of the ☽ in all her Aſpects, both Dexter and Siniſter, (as well as in the ☌) which you are to obſerve in Directing unto any of them, as for Example.

If you would direct to the ✶ or △ of the ☽, ſearch in the Ephemeris what Latitude the ☽ had when ſhe came to thoſe places where the Aſpects fell, and finde her Right or Obl. Aſcenſion with that Latitude under the Pole of the Significator, and ſo work out the Direction; thus, in the ☽s Aſpects it is plain and eaſie to be performed. although in the three Superiours there is a little more trouble. and whatever may be ſaid in contradiction of this way in the other Planets, yet nothing can be objected concerning this of the ☽ becauſe ſhe is a ſecondary Planet, alwayes moving about the Earth, and reſpecting that for her common Node, or Center, as the primary Planets do the ☉.

This



This demonstrative Figure will sufficiently inform the the Phancy. For that Circle where the Characters of the Aſpects are ſet, is the Orbit of the Planet, wherein the Center of his body (and according to Computation the very Apex of all his Aſpects) are in one part or other to be found; The prickt Circle is parrallel to the Ecliptique, though not Con-centrique with it; The Interſection of thoſe two Circles are the Nodes of the Planet, and their diſtance the Planets Inclination, or Latitude at the ☉. The innermoſt Circle is the Orbite of the Earth, and her place at ●, from whence the Planets place and Aſpects are formed

formed, the Center thereof the ☉. Thus you have in as brief a method as could be, the manner of computation, as also the Demonstration.

Now that the former Rule for the three superiours, ♄, ♃ and ♂, is Rational and Universal, as may be seen in this, for having the same things known, viz. the ☉ Longitude and Distance. the Precession and Longitude of a Planet, you may thereby finde the Planets Latitude (as by tryal will appear).

Morinus *in his Thesis seemeth to speak the same thing about the Latitude of the Aspects, although in practice he cometh short thereof, I suppose not having a facil way to perform it by; For indeed before Mr.* Streets *Tables were made publique it was difficult, and exceeding troublesome by any Tables extant. From this brief method may particular Tables be made for each Planet. Thus having the opportunity, I thought good to make publique these new proposals, which (if rightly understood) cannot but be very acceptable to all lovers of Art. And so I proceed. unto*

SECTION III.

Observations to be noted in Directing.

WHat a Significator or promittor is, I have already shewed, but in what order you are to direct them shall in the next place be plainly discovered, and thus laid down, *Viz.*

1 *In directing the Ascendent or Horoscope, you are*

to perform your operations by Oblique Aſcenſions only, taken under the Latitude of the place of birth, viz, having the Oblique Aſcenſion of the Aſcendent, finde alſo the Oblique Aſcenſion of your Promittor (with Latitude if he have any) under the ſame Elevation of the Pole aforeſaid: and Laſtly, ſubſtract the Oblique Aſcenſion of your Significator (Viz. Aſcendent) from the Oblique Aſcenſion of your Promittor (Viz The Body or Aſpect of a Planet) and the remainer is the Ark of Direction required.

2 *In Directing of the Meridian Circle, (viz. the M. C. or I. C. or Cuſps of the 10th, or 4th houſes) that is alwayes performed by Right Aſcenſions. Thus, Subſtract the R. A. of the M. C. or I. C. from the R. A of your Promittor, (alwayes regarding his Latitude if he be not in the Ecliptique) and the remainer is the Ark (or Arch) of Direction ſought, which you are to meaſure out into time, as ſhall be ſhewed in its proper place.*

Note, As the *Aſcendent* is Directed, the ſame method muſt be uſed in Directing the Weſt Angle, or 7 th houſe, which is oppoſit to the *Aſcendent*, and as the *Angles*, ſo any Planet poſited upon the *Cuſps* of any of the four *Angles*, &c.

3 *To Direct the* ☉, ☽, *and* ⊕, *you are to obſerve another method (Viz.) The Elevation of the Pole above the Circles of poſition they are upon, muſt firſt be obtained, provided they are not poſited upon the very Cuſp of ſome of the houſes, for then you have it given without farther trouble, but this ſeldom happens.*

Firſt, *Having the Planets Longitude and Latitude, (exactly reduced as hath been ſhewed).* Secondly, *Finde his Declination North or South, above or under the Earth.* Thirdly, *His Right Aſcenſion.* Fourthly, *By that his*

diſtance

diſtance from the Meridian, (*Viz. The* 10*th or* 4*th houſe, according as he is plac't under, or above the Earth*) Fifthly, *By that the Poles Elevation above the Circle of poſition,* Sixthly, *His Oblique Aſcenſion under that pole if poſited in the* 10*th,* 11*th,* 12*th,* 1*ſt,* 2*d, or* 3*d houſes, or Oblique Deſcenſion if poſited in the* 4*th,* 5*th,* 6*th,* 7*th,* 8*th, or* 9*th houſes; Except you will work by the Planets oppoſit place in the Figure, for then you are alwayes to make uſe of the Oblique Aſcenſion only; having thus gained the Oblique Aſcenſion of your Significator, you are alſo to finde the Promittors Oblique Aſcenſion under the ſame Pole of poſition; and Laſtly, Subſtract the Significators Oblique Aſcenſion from the Promittors, and the remainer is the Arke of Direction required. After the ſame manner are all the reſt of the Planets to be directed if you would direct them as Significators.*

Theſe things if rightly underſtood will be exceeding eaſie by practiſe, and ſhall be farther cleared by familiar Examples, from the precedent Exemplary Geniture

---

SECTION. IIII.

Of the effects of Directions.

IT is not my intent largely to diſcourſe of this particular Subject, neither will this ſmall volume contain what may be ſaid thereof, and leaſt I ſhould cauſe this ſmall Pocket Companion to ſwell beyond its intended limits, I ſhall therefore as I began, contract the heads thereof that it may be ſufficiently uſeful to an Ingenious

Aſtro-

Astrophilus, and leave those that desire more variety to satisfie themselves from those Authors that have copiously handled this and other things of the same Nature.

First. *Then, Let the Artist be well acquainted with the Nature and significations of the Planets, what they signifie of themselves, and what by accident in any Nativity. Let him also consider their strength and weakness therein; as also what houses they are Lords of In the next place he ought to look upon the Directions, and consider whether they be good or bad, which is most easily discovered by considering whether they be Benevolent or Malevolent; and especially take notice of the condition of the Promissor, and how he was Fortified or Debilitated in the Radix, and accordingly order your Judgement concerning the signification of the Direction. If the Significator and Promissor were both strong in the radix, and the Direction falls in a good place of the Figure, or in their Dignities, and it be also a good Direction,* [V.z.] *To the* ☌, ✶, *or* △ *of some Benevolent Planet, &c. Why then you may conclude, the Effects thereof will be very famous to the Native, and he shall receive much good from thence. But on the other side, if the Significator or promittor were both weak in the Radix, and the Direction fall in their Debilities, Judge the contrary; or if a Significator and Promittor were but meanly fortified in the Radix, and the Direction happen to be good, and fall well, yet the Native may not expect that the accidents presignified thereby should take place so effectually as otherwise they might have done, had they been also potent in the Geniture.*

By this little that hath been said, an Ingenious Artist may understand the whole scope of what is signified by Directions, and make a large application thereof, for he that would be a good proficient in these matters must not

not expect large presidents, for all he doth in this kinde but he ought to exercise and intermix his Reason also with his Judgement, which will not a little help, after he is well grounded in the Fundamentals thereof.

2 *Note farther, that a good direction brings much Prosperity and Happiness along with it to the Native and it will be of the same kind that the Significator doth properly denote of himself, consideration had to the house he governs in the Radix, or is constituted in, and hence it will not be hard for the Artist to inform himself from what kind of persons or things, or of what nature the good promised by such a Direction will be. The Promissors signification is also to be consulted, which intimates the cause of the happiness that is promised; thus as you judge of the Significator, in the same manner order your judgement for the Promissor, or that Planet that promises felicity to the Native. So if the Direction be bad, and threatens Mischief, and cross adverse Fortune to the Native, consider the nature thereof by the signification of the Significator as before Directed, and the cause from whence the evil may arise is known from the signification of the Promissor in the Radix, not neglecting to take notice if the place wherein the Direction falls,* Viz *Both the Signe and House of Heaven, and likewise the strength or weakness of Significator and Promissor at the time that the Direction happens, as also what Planets then do behold them, or the place of the Direction by Transit, &c.*

In all Directions consider the age of the Native, for Events should be accommodated to the differences of times.]

3 *The Ascendent or Horoscope, which signifies the life of any person in his Nativity, as also his Body, Complexion, manners, and Affection of the minde, is therefore Di-*

Directed to his ſeveral Promittors, which if it meets with good Directions, and the Aſpects or Bodyes of fortunate Planets, it denotes health, proſpertiy and happineſs to the Native. and much Earthly felicity and peace of minde. But on the contarry, if the Aſcendent meets with bad Directions, Viz. *to the Bodies, or Beams of the Malevolent Planets (or Stars) which accidentally govern evil houſes in the Radix; then this Direction portends much Miſchief, Sickneſs, or other Infirmities or Croſſes, to happen to the Native; and in fine, much affliction to the Body of the ſame nature or kinde that thoſe Planets denote, who are Promiſſors in this Direction.*

4 *The* M. C. *or Mid-heaven is directed for Preferment Honour, Offices, Friendſhip from great perſons, Trade, or Profeſſion, alſo for accidents to the Mother of the Native; with diverſe other things of this nature (principally ſignified by this houſe) that may happen accidentally to the Native.*

But (oftentimes) it is directed by ſome for accidents relating to the Body alſo, as, Sickneſs, &c. (as well as the Angle of the Horoſcope.)

5 *The* ☉ *is Directed for Honour and Preferment, be it publique or private, for Friendſhip and Favour from perſons in power, &c. But more particularly it is Directed for accidents relating to the Body, as, the Health or Sickneſs of the Native. The Direction of the* ☉ *points out many things relating to the Eſtate and Condition of the Natives Father alſo, and many times brings afflictions to his Body, as well as Changes and Alterations both good and bad, in his publique Concerns in the world, &c.*

6 *The* ☽ *is Directed as a Significator, becauſe ſhe hath*

a

a large Signification in the Genitre of any person, (as well as the ☉) she signifies the constitution and complexion, as also the Inclination and Intentions of the Native, the Natives Journeys, long or short, Marriage, and in particular the estate and condition of the Wife, Women in general, and all near relations, as, Kinsfolks, and such like, as well Male as Female.

7 The ♁ is Directed for Profit, and Increase or Loss of Estate, according as it meets with the Aspects or Conjunctions of good or bad Planets (or starrs), If ♁ meets with a good and fortunate Promissor, and the Direction falls in a good place of Heaven, where they are either or both of them well dignified, this promises an augmentation of Riches to the Native, But if he meets with the evil Aspects of the Infortunes Judge the contrary.

8 These five Hyligiacals are only Directed (usually) in any Geniture, but many times those that affect curiosity will also direct the other Planets. Their significations (being directed as Significators) are generally thus, As Authors write.

First ♄ Is Directed, to signifie the fruits of the earth Inheritances Possessions, Buildings, &c. Fears and Jealousies, &c. And this according to the strength or weakness of ♄ in the Nativity.

♃ Is Directed for Wealth, Prosperity, Advancement, &c. Children in general, Wisdome, Prudence, Temperance, &c.

♂ is Directed for Courage and Boldness of spirit, viz. Animosity, Victory, War, Contentions and Law-Suits, as also the estate and conditions of Brethren and such like

♀ is directed for all kinde of Pleasures and Delights Love, Matrimony, Costly Ornaments, &c. and for the Femal Sex in general.

♀ is Directed for Learning, Ingenuity, the Understanding, as also for Merchandizing and Trade, Industry, Fourneyes, &c. Lastly, For younger Brethren and such like.

These are but General significations which the Planets properly declare of themselves barely considered. But you are to moderate your judgement, according to the houses they are accidentally posited in, in any Geniture; as also what houses they chiefly govern, as is before intimated; Thus, the premises being but well considered, you cannot fail to give a most significant and Rational judgement upon any Direction whatever, as also perfectly understand the true intent and meaning of whatsoever is signified by Directions in general.

Lastly, If you would know how long the force of a Direction shall continue, you are to consider the strength, or weakness both of Significator and Promittor in the Geniture, if they are both strong, or essentially dignified therein, the effects of the Direction shall powerfully manifest it selfe, and what ever is promised thereby, shall take place effectually, and continue durable, until such time the same Significator meets with another Promittor.

But if they were but weak in the Radix the effects of this Direction will be inconsiderate, and leave but a small shew of their force upon the Native, if the Significator were strongest the Direction operates and with much ease the Native attains to that good thereby signified, If the Promissor were strongest, although the Direction may take place, yet it shall not be so forcible as is promised, neither will

will it be anſwerable to the pains and induſtry that the Native uſes, in attaining the good thereby ſignified.

Note alſo that if the Infortunate Planets happen to be Promiſſors in any Direction, and therein threaten ſome eminent danger unto the Native, this evil will not afflict the Native and take place to the height, if ſo be they were ſtrong and potent in the Radix. But if they were debilitated there, you may expect the greater Infelicity to happen; 'tis alſo to be Obſerved that ♃ and ♀ may accidentally happen to be Infortunes, and ♄ and ♂ Fortunes in ſome mens Genitures.

If two Directions happen to be in force together, and operate at one and the ſame time, the one being good, the other exceeding bad, conſider which of them is the ſtrongeſt and to which the Revolution of the Year doth beſt agree, and judge that Direction will operate moſt forcibly, which if it be the good Direction, it will much mittigate (if not quite extinguiſh) the effects of the bad; or if the bad Direction, 'twill overpower the force of the good one ſo that the ſhadow thereof, will only appear, and the effects thereof not conſiderable.

SECTION. V.

Of the meaſure of Time in Directions. &c.

PTolomy's meaſure is for every degree of the Æquator, to allow one year, and for every minute 6 dayes, 2 hours 6 minutes. And ſo 365 dayes 6 hours contain one whole degree or 60 minutes as appears by this following Table.

A Table of the measure of Time in Directions, according to *Ptolomy*.

M	Day	Ho.	Min.	M	Day	Ho.	Min.
1	6	2	6	31	188	17	6
2	12	4	12	32	194	19	12
3	18	6	18	33	200	21	18
4	24	8	24	34	206	23	24
5	30	10	30	35	213	01	30
6	36	12	36	36	219	03	36
7	42	14	42	37	225	05	42
8	48	16	48	38	231	07	48
9	54	18	54	39	237	09	54
10	60	21	0	40	243	12	00
11	66	23	6	41	249	14	06
12	73	1	12	42	255	16	12
13	79	3	18	43	261	18	18
14	85	5	24	44	267	20	24
15	91	7	30	45	273	22	30
16	97	9	36	46	280	00	36
17	103	11	42	47	286	02	42
18	109	13	48	48	292	04	48
19	115	15	54	49	98	06	54
20	121	18	00	50	304	09	00
21	127	20	6	51	310	11	06
22	133	22	12	52	316	13	12
23	140	0	18	53	322	15	18
24	146	2	24	54	328	17	24
25	152	4	30	55	334	19	30
26	158	6	36	56	340	21	36
27	164	8	42	57	346	23	42
28	170	10	48	58	353	01	48
29	176	12	54	59	359	03	54
30	182	15	0	60	365	06	00

This Opinion of *Ptolomey's*, (as to the meaſure of Time in Directions) continued without contradiction, until the laſt age.

Then *Antonius Maginus* a learned *Italian*, and great Mathematician, began to queſtion it (as Mr. *Lilly* relates) and affirms that the meaſure of time ought to be taken from the true and apparent motion of the ☉, and not from his ſimple motion, as you may read in *Maginus* his *Primum Mobile*, fol. 51. So then he concludes that the difference between the ☉ Right Aſcenſion at the Birth, and the ſame hour and minute the next day following, ſhall be the Meaſure of Time for a Year By which method a Table may be fitted to any particular Geniture, or you may ſee a general Table thereof *page* 711. of *Chriſtian Aſtrology*, this meaſure hath been in great eſteem with ſome able Artiſts of this Nation.

But a third Meaſure of time (and now generally approved of as beſt) is that of *Valentine Naybod*, a ſingular Mathematician, which is grounded upon the ☉s mean motion, to be the meaſure of time for a Year. And by that Rule one whole degree gives one year 5 dayes 8 hours, and 59′ 8″ gives one compleat Year, and ſo every min gives 6 dayes and about 4 hours A Table whereof you may ſee in the aforementioned Book. *p.* 731 and *p.* 108 *Doct Nat.*

This laſt meaſure is by all Modern Authors approved as the beſt, and *Maginus* highly eſteems of it, and looks upon it as the moſt certain meaſure of time hitherto made uſe of, and ſo do I; Now there is no conſiderable difference in any of thoſe meaſures of time, and either of them may be uſed; for in ſome Nativities the one it may be will agree better then another, and therefore every man may uſe that meaſure which pleaſes him beſt.

Here followeth a general Æquation Table for the Arke of Direction in all Nativities, according to Naybod's *meaſure.*

A general Æquation Table for the Arch of Direction. *Secund. Naybod.*

Ark Dir.	Æquat. add.	Arch of Direct.	Æquat. add.	Arch of Direct.	Æquat. add.
	d ′		d ′		d ′
1	0 1	29	0 25	57	0 50
2	0 2	30	0 26	58	0 51
3	0 3	31	0 27	59	0 52
4	0 3	32	0 28	60	0 53
5	0 4	33	0 29	61	0 54
6	0 5	34	0 30	62	0 55
7	0 6	35	0 31	63	0 55
8	0 7	36	0 32	64	0 56
9	0 8	37	0 32	65	0 57
10	0 9	38	0 33	66	0 58
11	0 10	39	0 34	67	0 59
12	0 11	40	0 35	68	1 00
13	0 11	41	0 35	69	1 1
14	0 12	42	0 37	70	1 2
15	0 13	43	0 38	71	1 3
16	0 14	44	0 39	72	1 4
17	0 15	45	0 40	73	1 5
18	0 16	46	0 40	74	1 6
19	0 17	47	0 41	75	1 7
20	0 17	48	0 42	76	1 8
21	0 18	49	0 43	77	1 9
22	0 19	50	0 44	78	1 10
23	0 20	51	0 45	79	1 11
24	0 21	52	0 45	80	1 12
25	0 22	53	0 46	81	1 13
26	0 23	54	0 47	82	1 14
27	0 24	55	0 48	83	1 15
28	0 25	56	0 49		

The uſe of this Table is plain and eaſie, thus *Vit.*

Let the Arke of Direction be ſuppoſed 29 *d.* 30′, *ſeek* 29 *under the title, Arke of Direction, and againſt it I finde* 25′ *which is alwayes to be added to the Arke of Direction given, and it makes the former number* 29 *d.* 55′. *the Æquated Arch. So then I conclude that at* 29 *years* 11 *moneths the Direction will hit. And here it is to be noted that if an Accident happen within the compaſs of a moneth either before or after the Direction, you may notwithſtanding conclude the Nativity is exactly Rectified, for indeed it is near as an Artiſt will preſume to go, though many times it may fall out neare, but very rarely.*

Another example for practiſe.

Suppoſe the Ark of Direction be 32 *d.* 12′. *I enter the Table alwayes againſt the whole degrees of Direction in the leſſer Collume intituled* Arch Direct. *and there I ſeek the number* 32 *d. againſt which I finde* 28′ *to be added, and it makes the aforeſaid Arch* 32 *d* 40′ *then I repair to the Table of* Ptolomey's *meaſure, allowing for every degree one year, and entering the Table with* 40′ *I finde againſt it* 243 *da.* 12*h. So that the Direction ſhould take place at* 32 *years* 243 *dayes, &c. Thus having æquated your Arch of Direction, you have the years and dayes thereof by inſpection, according to* Naybod's *meaſure.*

And hence a Table may be fitted particular to any Geniture by the help of *Ptolomy's* Table, as for Example in the propoſed Geniture, The Native was born *October* the 4th, in the aforeſaid Table againſt 1′ in the firſt Collume, I finde 6 dayes, &c. Therefore in my prepared Table following I ſet againſt 1′ *October* the 10 h. againſt 2′ *October* the 16th, and ſo on as the firſt Table directs, And is eaſily underſtood by this following Example.

A fitted Table to the proposed Geniture for the more ready finding the Day (or at least the Month) of a Direction agreeable to the odd min of the Æquated Arch.

Min.	Month.	Day.	Min.	Month	Day.
1	Octob.	10	31	April.	10
2		16	32		16
3		22	33		22
4		28	34		28
5	Novem	3	35	May	5
6		9	36		11
7		15	37		17
8		21	38		23
9		27	39		29
10	Decem.	3	40	June	4
11		9	41		10
12		16	42		16
13		22	43		22
14		28	44		28
15	January	3	45	July	4
16		9	46		11
17		15	47		17
18		21	48		22
19		27	49		29
20	Feb.	2	50	August	4
21		8	51		10
22		14	52		16
23		21	53		22
24		27	54		28
25	March	5	55	Septem.	3
26		11	56		9
27		17	57		15
28		23	58		22
29		29	59		28
30	April	4	60	Octob.	4

The uſe of the Table is thus,

In the Nativity, Suppoſe the Aſcendent to the ☌ of ♀ and the Ark of Direction 24d. 5′ in the Æquation Table againſt 24d. I finde 21′ to be added to the Æquated Arch ſo the equated Arch is 24 d. 26′. againſt 26′ in Ptolomyes Table I finde 158 dayes 6 hours, &c. but in this prepared Table againſt 26′ I finde March 11., *the day of the month required, But the Native Married 4 dayes after,* viz, March 15*th*, 1665. *I preſume this is near enough for a Direction and accident to meet as before I have hinted.*

[By this means there needs no Table of the dayes of the year collected after the vulgar manner, and afterwards 2 or 3 operations by *Naybod's* Table to finde the years and dayes, and this way is no leſs exact, for it never differs over or under more then about 3 or 4 dayes, a thing not conſiderable in this matter.]

Another meaſure of time (which ſeems to be very rational) is this, Take the apparent R. A, of the ☉ from the day of the Nativity, (be it more or leſs then equal degrees) day by day forward on, As thus. let the difference of R. A. of the ☉ from the day of Birth to ten dayes after compleat be the meaſure of time for 10 years, &c. This may be brought into practiſe, and fitted to any particular Geniture, by this following method, *Viz.* Take the R. A. of the ☉ at Noon for the day of Birth, and the like the next day after, and ſo on for 70 or 80 dayes, and then take the Complement of the dayly difference from the firſt dayes R. A. to equal degrees, and put them into a Table, and ſo you have an Æquation table to be uſed as before directed.

[*Note that the 4 firſt Collumes direct you how the Æquated Arches are made, and the 2 laſt Collumes are only uſeful, which you may continue as far as you pleaſe.*]

Example from the proposed Geniture Octob. 4. 1641. &c.

day.	☉ place		R.A ☉		dif. R.A		Comp		Ar. D
	d	′	d	′	d	′	d	′	
4	21♎	19	199	41	0	00	0	0	0
5	22	19	200	38	0	57	0	3	1
6	23	19	201	34	1	53	0	7	2
7	24	18	202	29	2	48	0	12	3
8	25	18	203	26	3	45	0	15	4
9	26	18	204	23	4	42	0	18	5
10	27	18	205	19	5	38	0	22	6
11	28	17	206	15	6	34	0	26	7
12	29	17	207	13	7	32	0	28	8
13	0♏	17	208	10	8	29	0	31	9
14	1	17	209	7	9	26	0	34	10
19	6	17	213	56	14	15	0	45	15
24	11	18	218	51	19	10	0	50	20
28	15	19	222	50	23	09	0	51	24

After this Method you may proceed to make an Æquation Table for any Geniture, and use it in all respects as before, only with this Caution, if your differences fall less then 1 deg. Add, but if more Substract the Æquation from the Arke of Direction, and you have then the true Æquated Arch, &c.

This measure of time is supposed (by some) to be that which *Maginus* hinted at many Years since, and hath been much used and most approved of by my loving friend Mr. *E.* who hath found (as he saith) abundance of verity therein above all other wayes; neither is it different (I suppose) from the learned *Keplar's* measure, who takes the ☉s daily motion in the Ecliptique, but this for more conveni-

veniency is the ☉ Diurnal R. A. &c. which measure of time exactly agrees with that method of Directing proposed before the beginning of this Chapter.

This Measure I have the more willingly inserted because Artists might experiment the truth thereof in their daily practise. But in this present work I shall wholly adhere to *Naybod*'s measure of Time, and *Argol*'s method of Directing in the Aspects, by reason they have been hitherto generally received and well approved of by diverse Learned Authors, who have sufficiently verified the truth thereof in many Genitures; therefore I have chosen to Rectifie the exemplary Nativity according to *Naybods* measure. Where Note that it is the opinion of *Morinus* a great Astrologer, that Converse Directions may be best made use of in Rectification, &c. [*This Converse Direction I have at the beginning of this Chapter explained.*] To conclude, observe this as a general Rule, that whatsoever measure of time you Rectifie a Nativity by, you are to use the same measure in all the Directions, but to Rectifie by one kind of measure and Direct by another is absurd.

CHAP

CHAPTER. VIII.

Examples of Calculating the Elevation of the Pole above any Circle of Position of the Planets or Stars that are to be Directed as Significators, as also their Oblique Ascensions, or Descensions, and all things requisit in Directions (the better to explain and illustrate those Rules laid down Chap. 3. Sect. 3. pag. 46. &c.) *from the Exemplary Geniture,* pag. 71.

THe Antiscions and Contra-Antiscions of the Planets in that Figure present themselves thus according to the Rule given at the latter end of *Page* 156 *Introductory part.*

Ant,	d.	′	Con. A.	Ant	d.	′	Con, A
♄ ♎	23	38	♈	♀ ♈	23	28	♎
♅ ♍	26	34	♉	☿ ♓	19	51	♍
♂ ♓	20	30	♍	☽ ♍	8	29	♉
☉ ♓	9	7	♍				

Here follows a Speculum of the Exemplary Geniture drawn according to the Rules given, Chap. 1. Sect. 2. pag. 6.

de	♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♍	♎	♏	♐	♑
0										
1										
2	D 9						D 3			
3	✶	☿ ☽ □	△		☌		△	☊ ☍ □	✶	
4		M. C.						D 4		
5			Oc ♉						Co ♏	
6		✶	□	△		☌		△	□	✶
7		△	□	✶		☿ 32		✶	□	△
8		Ca D						☊		
9	☌		△	□	✶	Ca ☉	☌ 30		✶	□
10	☌		△	□	✶	D. 2.	☿ 9′		✶	□
11										
12										
13										
14										
15										
16										
17										
18										
19			D. 11		Asc.		♓ in ♍		D 5.	
20	☌		△	□	✶	Ca ☿	☉ 53		✶	□
21	✶	□	△		☌	Ca ☌	△	□	✶	
22										
23	A ☿						Ca ☿			
24	Ca ♄				Co ☊		An ♄			
25				D 12						D. 6.
26										
27		Ca ♅						A. ♅		
28										
29										
30										

Place this between pag. 184. a















SECTION I.

How this Nativity was Rectified:
First by Accidents.

AGed 17 Years 4 Months odd dayes, *Viz. February* 1658. the Native had an Accident compared with the Mid Heaven to the *Quartil* of *Luna*, which fell in 21 d. 1′ of ♉. Now in the Ephemeris of *Durret*, I seek when the ☽ came to that point of ♉ Which was the 10th day of *October* 1641. *Viz.* (7 dayes after the Birth) and by making proportion I finde she had 1 deg 17′ South Latitude when she toucht the aforesaid point, the R. Ascen. of the □ of the ☽ with 1 deg. 17′ South Latitude will be found 49 deg. 6′, from which Substract the R. Ascen. of the *M. C. Viz.* 32 deg. 20′, and there remains for the Ark of Direction 17 deg. 6′, then I repair to the Table of the Æquation for the Arke of Direction *Secund. Naybod.* and against 17 years in the first Collume I finde 15′ to be added, which makes the Arke of Direction 17 d. 21′ for the 17 deg I allow 17 Years, and with the 21′ I enter the fitted Table to the Geniture, and against 21′ I finde *Febrnary* the 8th day, and near that time the Accident happened, and the Direction began to operate.

Now if *I* take the R. Asc of the □ of the ☽ without respect to her Latitude, which is 48 deg. 55′, from which deducting the Right Ascension of the *M. C.* 32 d. 20′ there rests for the Ark of Direction 16 d. 35′ which according to the former method points out the later end of *July* 1658, whereas the Direction began to operate and the accident happened in *February* 165$\frac{8}{9}$ which was 6 Months after, therefore the ☽s Latitude doubtless is to be considered in her □ Aspect as well as in any other Aspect, this is Rational therefore carefully to be observed, which may be far easier performed in the ☽ then in the rest of the Planets, as

before

before I have hinted, and is clearly demonstrated, and sufficiently experienced by that Learned Artist *Morinus* as you may read at large in his *Astrologia Gallica*, and particularly in those Eminent and Illustrious persons Genitures. *Viz.* The present King of *France* and late Queen of *Poland*.

2 *Aged* 24 Years 162 dayes *viz.* the 15th of *March* 1665. the Native Married, upon the Ascendents progress to th ☌ of ♀ with Latitude.

♀ in 6 d. 22′ ♍ Lat. 0 30 Nor	Oblique *Ascension* under the pole of the Ascen.	d. ′ 146 25
From which substract the Obl. Asc.	*Ascendent*	122 20
Rests the *Arke* of Direction		24 5

Unto which add the Æquation Correspondent to 24 years which is 21′ and the true Arch of Direction will be 24d 26′ 24 deg. points out 24 years, and 26′ points out in the fitted Table for the Nativity *March* 11th and 4 dayes after the Native Married.

The Native was very sickly and unhealthful all his younger years, and laboured under the effects of the Ascendent. Directed to *Cor* ♌ and other violent *Martial* and *Saturnine* Stars, as also to the ☍ of the ☽ Lady of the 12th, Diverse other *Accidents* agreeing with Directions, I could insert, but these are sufficient to verifie the *Ascendent*, and *M. C.* and consequently the whole figure to be the Natives true Nativity. [*Here it will not be amiss to Consult that Example* Pape 8 *and* 9 Chap. 1 Sect. 3]

3 *Lastly by the Trutine of* Hermes,

The ☽ is distant from the West *Angle* 1 deg. 53′, I enter the *Table*, *page* 12. and seek *October* at top, to which answers

swers *January* under it for the Month of Conception, then enter the first Collmne to the left hand Entituled, ☽ *Supra Terram ab Occasu in Nativitatibus*, and the neareſt number is 0 *S.* 0 d juſt at bottom (for the next above is 13 deg.) and right under *October*, and *January* againſt the ſaid 0 s. 0 d. I finde 14 dayes to be added to the third day of Birth, and that points out the 17*th* of *January* for the day of Conception and in *Durrets* Ephemeris I finde the ☽ that day at noon 13 d. 38′ in ♌ wanting 5 d. 54′ of the degree and minute *Aſcending*; now the ☽s Diurnal motion being then 12 d 45′ I finde ſhe moves 5 d. 54′ in 11 hours 10′. So that by this account upon *January* the 17th 16½ at 11 hours 10′ *P. M.* was the true time of conception, for then the ☽ was in the very degree and minute of the *Aſcendent*, and thus the Nativity is rectified according to the *Trutine* of *Hermes* alſo. [*See the Rule* Chapter 1. Section 5 *and* 6 *Page* 11 *&c.*]

SECTION II.

Examples how to finde the Poles Elevation above the Circles of Poſition of the ☉ ☽ and *Pars* ⊕, *&c.* By Trigonometrical Analogy.

1 FOR *the* ☽ *whoſe Longitude is found in* 21 *d.* 31′ *of* ♒ *with* 4 *d* 52′ *North Latitude, Subſtract her Longitude out of* 60 *deg* [*According to the firſt Rule given Sect* 2 *page* 43] *and there remains* 38 d. 29′ *for her diſtance from the next Equinoxial point* ♈ *becauſe ſhe is poſited in* ♒ (*according to the third Rule of that*

Sect,

Section) Consult, also Sect. 3 Chap. 7. for the D Declination, I operate thus, (according to the 4th Prop pa. 47 hereof.

Add the { Sine of the Long.) from ♈		38 d.	29′	9793991
{ Cotangent of her Latitude		4 d.	52′	1069845
Tangent of the first Arch		82 d.	12′	10863836
unto which add		23	30	
It produces the second Arch		105	42	
	(Comp. to 180)		74 d.	18′

Sine of the Latitude		4 d.	52′	8928587 }
Co-Sine of the first Arch		82,	12 co.ar.	0867370 } add,
Co-Sine of the 2d Arch		74	18	9432329 }
It gives the Sine of) Dec.	9	44	South	9228286

For her Right Ascension.

Tangent of her Long ab ♈		38 d.	29′	9900346 }
Sines of the { 1 Arch		82 d.	12′ Com. Ar.	0004037 } add
{ 2 Arch		74	18	9983487 }
This produces the Tangent of		37 d	38′	9887870

which substracted from 360. (according to the Note given pag. 49 hereof) leaves 322 d. 22′ for the Right Ascension of) desired,

Substract the R. A.) from the R. A. of M C. [according to Prop. 5. pag. 48.] (by adding the Circle or 360. where Substraction cannot be made) and you have her distance from the Meridian in Right Ascension.

Thus

Thus R. Ascen. M. C. cum Circulo	392	20
R. Ascen. ☽ Substract.	322	22
Remains her Distance desired,	69	58
Reserve half of it, Viz.	34	59
The Comp. of the Latitude of Birth	38	43
Declination of the ☽ before found is	09	44
Their Summ is	48	27
Their Difference is	28	59

Then according no the 6th Proposition, pag. 49. I proceed thus, (because the ☽ hath South Declination above the Earth.)

As the Sine of the aforesaid diff.	28 d	59′	Co.ar 0314657
is to the Sine of the Sum	48	27	9874121
So the Tan. of the reserved half dist.	34	59	9844958
to the Tang. of	47 d	13′	10033736
But substract	34	59	the half dist. ab Merid.
And there remains	12	14	for the Ascen. difference under the proper Pole of Position of the ☽.
The Sine of	12 d.	14′	As Diff. is 9326117 ad
The Co-Tang. of the ☽ declination	9 d	44′	10764655 ad
produces the tan. of the ☽ s pole of posit. (51 d)			10091772

For the Oblique Descen. ☽ (according to Prop. 7. pag. 50) work thus,

Right Aſcenſion of the ☽ before found	322	22
From which ſubſtract the Aſcen. Diff.	12	14
Remains the Oblique Deſcenſion ☽	310	8

becauſe the ☽ is in the Deſcending part of Heaven [according as is noted, *pag.* 51 hereof.]

---

2 For the Poles Elevation above the Circle of Poſition of the ☉ and his Obl. Aſc. take this Example.

The ☉ is in 20 *d.* 53′ ♎ *and therefore ſo far diſtant from the next Æquinoxial point.*

For the ☉s declination

Add the Sine of	23 *d.* 30′	*☉s Dec. Max.*	9600703
	20 53	*his Diſt. &c*	9552018
And you have the Sine of 8 *d.* 10′			9152718

V z, the Declination ☉ South, and under the Earth.

For his Right Aſcenſion

Ad the	*Co-ſine of* 23 *d.* 30′		9962398
	Tangent of 20 53		9581528
and you have the Tangent of 19 *d.* 17′			9543926
Unto which add	180	00	*according to the rule*
gives the true R. A ☉	199	17	*deſired,*

RA.

		d	′	
R. Ascen. of the Imum Cœli (or fourth house) is		212	20	
From which subtract R. Ascen. ☉		199	17	
Remains the ☉ dist. ab Merid.		13	3	
Reserve half of which [Viz.]		6	31	
Complement of the Lat. of Birth		38	43	
Declination of the ☉		08	10	
Their Sum is		46	53	
Their Differ. is		30	33	
the fine of the Summ	46 d. 53′ Co Ar.	0136699		add
the fine of the Differ.	30 33	9706112		add
Tang. of the half Dist.	6 31	9057781		add
Produces the Tang of	4 33	8900592		
The half dist. from the Merid.		6 d.	31′	
From which subtract this Arch		4	33	
Remains the ☉s Ascen. Difference under his proper Pole (unknown)		1	58	
Add The Sine of the ☉s Diff. Asc.	1 d. 58′	8531828		
Add The Co-tang. of the ☉ Declin.	8 10	10843153		
Produces the Tang. of the Pole of Position of the ☉		13	20	9374981
R. Ascen. of the ☉ is		199	17	
Ascen. Differ. add		1	58	
And you have the Ob. As. ☉		201	15	

For the Pole of Poſition of ⊕ and Obl. Deſcen.

Example.

Pars Fortunæ ♑ *in* 20 *d.* 6′ ♐, *Viz.* 80 *d*, 6′ *from the next Æquinoctial point* ♎.

Declination ⊕.

Ad the Sine of	23 *d*, 30′ ⊙ Dec. Max.		9600700
	28 6 *diſt.* â ♎		9993484
And you have the Sine of Decl. of ⊕ 23 *d.* 8′ *South under the Earth.*			9594184

Right Aſcenſion ⊕.

Addthe	*Co Sine*	23 *d.*	30′	9962398
	Tang. of	80	6	10758135
Produces the Tan. of		79	14	10720533
unto which add		180	0	
and you have		259	14	*the R. Aſcen.* ⊕.
From which ſubſtract		212	20	*R. A. J. C.*
Leaves		46	54	*Diſt.* ⊕ *ab Merid.*
Reſerve half of it		23	27	

Complement of the Lat. of Birth		38 *d.*	43′
Declination of ⊕		23	08
Their	*Summ* ♑	61	51
	Differ ♑	15	35

As

As the Sine of the Summ.	61 d.	51′	*Co.ar.*	0054604
to the Sine of the differ.	15	35		9429170
So the Tang. of the half diſt.	23	27		9637265
to the Tang of an Arch	7	32		9121039

The half diſtance from the Meridian,	23 d.	27′
From which ſubſtract this Arch	7	32
Remains the Aſcen. Differ. ⊕ under its proper Pole; unknown,	15	55

Laſtly,

Add { *Co-tang. ⊕ Declin.*	23 d	8′		0369344
{ *Sine Aſcen. Differ.*	15	55		9438129
their ſumm is Tangent of	32	42		9807473

Viz. the Poles Elevation above the Circle of Poſition of ⊕, as before in the ⊙ and ☽.

Right Aſcenſion of ⊕ before found is	259 d.	14′
Aſcentional difference of ⊕ ſubſtract	15	55
Leaves the Oblique Deſcenſion of ⊕ under the Pole of 32 d. 42′ before found.	243	19

After the ſame manner you may finde the Pole of poſition of the other Planets in any Figure, and ſo Direct them alſo, &c.

Theſe Examples being ſo plain and eaſie, a little practiſe will make the Learner expert in theſe kind of operations, which I think are not much inferiour to the ordinary Tables made for this purpoſe: provided they uſe the ſame exactneſs, *Viz.* to minutes in the Pole, (vulgarly called circles of poſition, &c.)

[If a man would be curious in finding the Cusps of the houses, Right Ascensions, or Declinations of Stars and Planets, he might hinde the seconds adhering in his operations, by making proportions in the Canon, but I have omitted it here for ease in Calculation, that so the Learner might not be discouraged, deeming minutes sufficiently exact in these matters, and the rather because the Canon is Calculated but to minutes.]

There is also another way of finding the Pole of position by an Arch of the Circle of position, mentioned *page* 51 hereof, an example of which in the ⊕ I shall here insert.

First observe the Rule given after the 8.th *Proposition, pag.* 51. proceed thus. *Viz.*

The Complement of the Declin. ⊕ *to* 90 *d. is*			66 *d.*	52′
add the Latitude of Birth			51	17
their { *Summ* } *is* { ——— }			118	09
{ *Diffe.* } { ——— }			15	35
the half distance of ⊕ *à* Merid. *as before*			23	27
Add { *the Sine of the Comp of the aforesaid sum to* 180 *d. Comp. Arith. is*	61 *d.*	51		0054672
{ *the Sine of the Difference*	15	35		9429170
{ *Tangent of the half dist.*	23	27		9637265
produces the Tangent of an Arch	7	32		9121107

The

	d.	′
The half diſt. aforeſaid	23	27
unto which add the Arch	7	32
Produces for an Arch of the Circle of Poſition.	30	59
unto which ad the ℞ A. of J. C. *according to Prop.* 4. *pag.* 52.	212	20
Leaves the Oblique Deſcen. ⊕	243	19

exactly as before found.

Then for the Poles Elevation above the Circle.

		d.	′	
add the	*Sine of this Circle*	30	59	9711629
	Tang. Lat. of Birth	51	17	0096017
And you have the Tangent of		32	42	9807656

for the Poles Elevation as before the other way, Et ſic de cæteris.

Note that in the operating for Right Aſcenſions and Declination of a Star or Planet, &c. you take his diſtance from the next Æquinoctial point ♈ or ♎; as before is ſhewed. But if you take their diſtance from the next Solſtitial point ♋ or ♑, you are then to alter the Sine or Tangent of that diſtance and inſtead thereof take the Co-Sine, or Co-tangent, and then the reſult will come out the ſame.]

SECTION III.

Examples of Directing the five Hyligyacals in the Exemplary Geniture (and conſequently any of the other Planets by the ſame method) According to the Rules given, to their ſeveral Promittors: only by the Artificial Canon of Sines and Tangents,

AND firſt the Aſcendent (whoſe Oblique Aſcenſion under the Poles Elevation 51 *d*. 17′ was found 12 *d*. 20′) Directed to the Body of ♀. in 6 *d*. 32′ ♍, Lat. 0 *d*. 30′ North, her diſtance from the next Æquinoctial point will be found (as directed, *pag* 43.) to be 23 *deg*. 28′.

For the R. A. of ♀ with Lat.

1 Add the Sine of her diſt from ♎ 23 d. 28′ 9600118
to the Co-Tangent of her Lat. 0d 30′ abate Ra. 2059142

their Sum will produce the Tan. of 88 44 11659260
call this the firſt Arch, from which ſub. 23 30 as you are directed p. 48) which is the greateſt obliquity of the ecliptick, and there remains 65 14 for the ſecond Arch.

2 Ad.

2

		d.	′	
Add the	Arith comp. of the Sine of	88	44	0000106
	Sine of the second *Arch*	65	14	9985106
	Tang. of her dist.	23	28	9637610
And their Sum abating Ra is the Tan.		21	31	1)9595822

This 21 *d.* 31′ *Subſtracted from* 180 *d.* (*becauſe the Longitude is in* ♍ *as you are directed pag.* 49) *leaveth the true R. A. of* ♀ 158 *d* 29′.

For the Declination of Venus, cum Lat.

Add the	*Arith.* Comp. of the *Co*-Sine	88	44	1655496
	Co-ſine of the 2d *Arch.*	65	14	9622135
	Sine of the Latitude	0	30	7940842
Their Sum abating R. is the Sine of Decl.		9	31	9218473

For the Aſcenſional Difference of ♀

		d.	′	
Add the	Tangent of the declination	9	31	9224382
	Tan. of the Lat. of the place	51	17	0096027
their Sum is the Sine Aſcen. Diff.		12	4	9320409

Now becauſe the Declination of ♀ *is North, ſubſtract her Aſcen. Diff from the R. A.* (*as you are directed, pag.* 50) *and there remains the Oblique Aſcenſion of* ♀ *under that Pole* 146 d 25′

From which ſubſt Ob. A. of the Aſcen, 122 20

and there remains the Arch of Direct, 24 5

In

In the Æquation Table for Naybods *Measure of time against* 24 d, *I finde* 21′ *to be added and that produces* 24 d 26′, *this* 24 d. *gives* 24 *years and the* 26′ *in the fitted table to the Geniture gives* March 11 *which from the Birth points out* March 11th 166⁴, *and the* 15th *day the Native married*

[*Let this plain admonition in this Direction of* ☿ *suffice to inform you how to observe the same method in all the rest of the Directions.*]

---

2 *The Ascendent Directed to the* ☌ *of* ♄ *which falls in* 6 d. 22′ ♍, *with* 1 d, 52′ *North Lat. Dist. from the next Æquinox* 23 d, 38′.

For the Oblique Ascen. of ♄*s opposit place, I proceed as before.*

Add the { Sine of the Long. or dist	23 d	38′	9603017
Co-Tang. of ♄s ☌ Lat.	1	52	1486902
gives the tan. of the first Arch	85	21	11089919
From which subtract	23	30	
and there remains for the 2d. Arch	61	51	

Having the first and second Arch, find first his Declination and Right Ascension thus, Viz.

I

Add the { Co-sine of { 1 Arch	85 d.	21′	co. arr	1091147
2 Arch	61	51		9673741
Sine of the Lat.	1	52		8512167
Their sum is the Sine of the decl	10	55		9277055

2

Add the Sine of 1 Arch	85 d.	21′	Co. ar.	0001412
Sine of 2 Arch	61	51		9945328
Tan. of Lon. or Dist.	23	38		9641069
Produces the Tan. of an Arch	21	9		9587810

which Subſtracted from 180 d. leaves 158 d. 51′ for the true R. A. of *Saturns* oppoſit place.

3

Add the Tangent of the declin.	10 d.	55′	9285268
Tang. of 51 d. 17′ the Lat. of the place			0096027
Produces the Sine of the *Aſcen.* Diff.	13 d.	55′	9381295

which ſubſtracted from the aforeſaid Right *Aſcen.* leaves the Obl. Aſcen. of ♄ oppoſit place. 144 d. 56′

From which Subſt. the Obl. Aſc. *Aſcendent* 122 20

Remains the *Arch* of Direction 24 36

which by the method before ſhewed in ♀ points out *September* the 15 1666, agreeable to the *Arch* of Direction Æ. quated 24 d 57′ in the fitted Table aforeſaid.

Note that in March 1666, the Aſcendent met with the Body of ♀ *(upon which direction the Native then Married) the Promiſſor* ♀ *was in* ♓, *and at the beginning of that Month did tranſit the Radical place of* ♄ *Lord of the 7th, and in* ☌ *of* ♅ *Lord of the 5th and 8th in in the ſame Signe.*

2. *When the Aſcendent was directed to the* ☍ *of* ♄ *in* September *1666,* ♄ *was then ſtrong in* ♈ *beholding the*

place

place of the Direction by a friendly △, and ☌ just separated from the △ of ♄s Radical place, (wherein he hath a triplicity) and in ✶ of the place of the Direction also.

☽ was at that time in ♏ her detriment, but in exact △ to ♄s Radicall place wherein she is exalted, and in ✶ to the place where the direction fell, all which considered, together with the Ascendent to the body of ♀ operating at the same time did much mitigate the evil and malignity of the ☍ of ♄, which otherwayes might have sufficiently afflicted the Native with some tedious Melancholly Disease which passed over only with some troubles and discontents in minde, and a very strong inclination to Melancholly, and unusual lumpish indisposition of body, which the Native being sensible, of, did endeavour to divert; here the force of that years Revolution was not altogether inconsiderable, and did much help also.

[*After this manner should all Directions be considered* (as before I have hinted) and thereby a man may be the better enabled to judge of their effects.]

☽ The Mid-heaven is thus Directed (*whose R. A. is 32 d 20′*) *to the △ of ♑ which falls in ☽ d 26′ of ♊ which hath Latitude of contrary denomination, Viz. of 27′ North.*

For the R. A of the △ of ♑ the Distance from ♈ is 63 degrees 26 minutes.

To the Sine of the Premittor dist.	63 d	26′	9951539
Add the Co tangent of the half Lat.	0	21	2104901
and it produces the Tan. of the 1st Ar.	89	30	12056440
From which Substract	23	30	
and there remains the 2d Arch	66	0	

add

		d.	′	
Add the	Sine of the 1 Arch	89	30	com. ar. 0000017
	Sine of the 2 Arch	66	0	9960730
	Tan. of the dist.	63	26	0300999
their Sum is the Tang. of		61	18	10261746

Which because the Longitude was in ♊ is the true R. A of the △ of ♃ sought, from which Subtract the R. A. of the *M. C. Viz.* 32 deg, 20′, and there remains the Arke of Direction 28 d 58′, unto which add 25′ the Æquation, and it will be 29 d, 23′, which points out *February* the 21, 167$\frac{0}{1}$.

---

4 *The* ☉ *Directed to the* □ *of* ♃ *which falls in* 3 *deg.* 26′ ♍ (*without consideration of Lat.*) *The Pole of Position of the* ☉ *was before found,* 13 d 20′ *and the Oblique Ascension under the Pole is* 201 d 15′ *the neareſt diſtance of the* □ *of* ♃ *is* 33 d, 26′

The Oblique Aſcenſion of the Quartil of ♃ *is found thus, Viz.*

		I		
Ad the	Sine of———	23d	30′	9600700
	Sine of the diſt or Lon	33	26	9741125
Gives the Sine of the declin.		12	41	9341825

		2		
Add the { Co-Sine of		23 d	30′	996239
{ Tang. of the dist.		33	26	981968
Produces the Tangent of		31	12	978208
Unto which add		180	00	
Their Summ is		211	12	the R. A. □ of ♀

	3	d.	′	
Add the { Tang of the declin.		12	41	935218
{ Tang. ⊙ Pole pos.		13	20	937473
Gives the Sine Ascen. Differ.		3	4	872701

which added to the R. A. gives the true Oblique Ascension of the □ of ♀ desired ——— 214 d 27′
From which Substract the Obl. Ascen. ⊙ 201 15

Remains the Arke of Direction	13	12
Add the Æquation belonging to 13 deg.	00	11
Gives the true Arke of Direction	13	12

which points out *December* 14th, 1654.

5 *The* ☽ (*whose Pole of Position was found* 51 d. 0′ *Oblique Descension* 310 d. 8′) *Directed to the* ☍ *of* ☿ *which falls in* 6 d. 32′ ♓, *Lat.* 0 d. 30′ *South, Distance from the next* Æ*quinoctial point* 23 d. 28′

For the Declination of the ☌ of ♀.

1

Ad the	Sine of the dist. (or long.)	23	28	9600118
	Cotang. of the Latitude	0	30	2059142
Gives the Tang. of the first Arch		88	44	11659250
Unto which add		23	30	
Their Sum is the second Arch		112	14	
whose Complement to 180 deg. is		67	46	

2

Ad the	Co-Sine first Arch	88 d	44′ Com. ar.	1655496
	Co-Sine 2d Arch	67	46	9577618
	Sine of the Latitude	0	30	7940842
Their Sum is the Sine of Decl.		8	35	9173956

For the R. A of the ☌ of ♀.

Ad the	Sine of the first Arch	88 d	44′ co. ar.	0000106
	Sine of the 2d Arch	67	46	9966447
	Tang. of the Longit.	23	28	9637610
Their Sum is the Tang. of		21	54	9604163

which Subtracted from 360 deg because the Longitude is in ♓, leaves the R. A. of the ☌ of ♀ 338 d 6′.

For the Ascensional Difference.

Ad the	Tang. of the Declin.	8 d	35′	9178799
	Tang. of ☽s Pole position	51	0	0091631
Produces the Sine of the *Ascen. diff,*		10	45	9270430
which Substracted from		328	6	the R. *A,*
leaves the Obl, Desc, of the ♂ of ♀		327	21	
From which Subst. the Obl. Desc. ☽		310	8	
Remains the Arke of direction		17	13	

Or the ☽ may be directed by the Oblique Ascension by taking the oppoſit place both of the Significator and Promittor thus,

The ☽s oppoſit place is in 21 *deg.* 31′ ♌, *Lat.* 4 *d* 52′ *South, her declination the ſame as in the* ♂ 9 *d.* 44. *but of contrary Denomination,* V. z. *North. her diſtance from the Meridian* 69 *d,* 58′ *and Pole of Poſition* 51 *deg. the ſame, but under the Earth, her Aſcen, Differ. the ſame alſo.*

The Arch for the ☽s Right Aſcenſion was found 37 *d* 38′ *which before was taken out of* 360 *deg. becauſe the Longitude was in* ♒ *but now being in* ♌ *muſt be taken out of* 180 *d, and ſo the Right Aſcenſion of the ☽s oppoſite place will be* 142 *d.* 22′, *and her Oblique Aſcenſion* 130 *d* 8′.

After the ſame manner only change the Right Aſcen of ♀ *which before fell in* ♓, *but now in* ♍, *and it will be* 158 *deg.* 6′ *the Declination, and Aſcenſional Difference the ſame, and (according to the former Rules) the Obl.*

Aſcen

Ascension of ♀ under the Pole of 51 deg.	147 d.	21′
From which Substract the Obl. Ascen. ☽	130	08
Leaves the Arch of Direction as before	17	13

Et sic in aliis.

According to the precedent method if you direct the ☽ to the ☌ of ♄ cum Lat. you shall finde the first and second Arch [85 *deg.* 21′] *and* 108 *d.* 51′ *whose Complement to* 180 *is* [71 d. 9′] *and thereby his declination* 7 *deg.* 27′ *R. A* 337 *d.* 26′ *his Obl. Descen.* 328 *d.* 8′, *and Arke of Direction* 18 *d.* 0′, *which will be the same also if you Direct to the Opposit place, by Oblique Ascension &c.*

Note that as you Direct the ☽, so you may Direct ♄, ♅, ♂, ♀, and ☿, having first found the Poles Elevation aobve thier Circles of Position,

---

6 *The* ⊕ *is Directed as the* ☉, *but take an example for practice, Viz.* ⊕ *Directed to the* □ *of* ♂ *which falls in* 9 *d.* 30′ ♍, *The Poles Elevation above the Circle of Position of* ⊕ *was found* 32 *d.* 42′, *Obl. Descen. under the Pole* 243 *d.* 19′.

		I		
add the	Sine of the Long.	80 d.	30′	9994903
	Sine of	23	30	9600700
Gives the Sine of the Declin.		23	10	9594703

2

Add the	Co-Sine of	23 d.	30′	9962398
	Tang. of the Long	80	30	0776393
Produces the Tang. of		79	39	10738791

Which ſubſtracted from 360 d Leaves the R. A. of the □ of ☌ (Sine Lat) 280 d. 21′

3

Add the	Tang. of the Declin.	23 d.	10′	9631354
	Tang. of the Pole of ⊕	32	42	9807527
You have the Sine of the Aſcen. Differ.		15	56	9438881

Which ſubſtracted from the R. A leaves the Obl. Deſcen. □ of ☌	264 d.	25′
From which ſubſtract the Obl. Deſcen. of ⊕	243	19
There remains for the Ark of Direction.	21	06

Having the Right Aſcenſion and Aſcenſional Difference of both Significator and Promiſſor you may finde the Arke of Direction without forming the Oblique Aſcenſion or Deſcenſion thus, *Viz.*

1 *Take the Difference of the Aſcenſional Differences of the Significator and Promittor, (by Subſtracting the leſſer from the greater) call that for diſtinction ſake, the Æquation, &c.*

2 *If the Declination of of Significator and Promiſſor be both North, add this Æquation to the R. A of the Signifi-*

nificator, or ſubſtract it from the R. A. of the Promittor, and then deduct the R. A. of the Significator from the R. A. of the Promittor, and the remainer is the true Arch of Direction deſired.

3 *If the Declination of Significator and Promittor be both South, ſubſtract the Æquation from the R. A. of the Significator, or add to it the Promittors R. A. and proceed as before.*

4 *If the Declination of the Significator be North and Promittor South, then inſtead of taking the Difference between the Aſcenſional Differences take the ſumm, and reſerve for the Æquation, and add it to the R. A. of the Promittor, &c.*

5 *But if the Declination of the Significator be South and the Promittor North, take the Æquation according to the 4th Rule, and add it to the R. A. of the Significator and ſo proceed, &c.*

A Caution.

All theſe 5 Rules you may obſerve if the Significator be in the Aſcending part of Heaven, and you direct by Obl Aſcenſion. But ſhould the Significator be poſited in the Deſcending part of Heaven, and you direct by Oblique Deſcenſion, then you are to operate clean contrary to this Method laid down, *that is*, If a Significator and Promittor have both North Declination, inſtead of adding the Æquation to the R. A of the Significator, &c. add it to the R. A. of the Promittor, &c. and ſo underſtand in the other varieties.

Examples from the former Work.

1 The ☉ was Directed to the □ of ♄ in 3 d 26′ m

the difference between the Aſcenſional Differences of the ☉ and □ of ♄ is 1 d. 6′, their Declinations are both South; therefore according to the third Rule, Subſtract this 1 d. 6′ (the Æquation) from 199 d. 17′ the R. A. of the Significator, and there remains 198 d. 11′, which ſubſtracted from 211 d. 12′ the R. A. of □ ♄, leaves the Arke of Direction 13 d. 1′ as before.

2

The ⊕ Directed to the □ ♂ whoſe R. A. is 280 d. 21′, the R. A. of ⊕ 259 d. 14′, the Æquation is 0 d. 1′ for the Aſcen. Diff. of the □ ♂ is 15 d. 56′, and of ⊕ 15 d, 55′, and their declinations both South, and the ⊕ in the Deſcending part of Heaven. Now contrary to the third rule according to the Caution given, add this 0 d. 1′ to the R. A. of the Significator makes it 259 d. 15. which ſubſtracted from the aforeſaid R. A. 280 d. 21′ leaves 21 d, 6′ the Arke of Direction as before.

[*More Examples are needleſs in a matter ſo plain and eaſie; this I confeſs will ſave no labour in the work, for having the Aſcen. Differ and the R. A. the Arke of Direction is ſoon obtained by Oblique Aſcenſion, or Deſcenſion, yet I thought convenient to inſert it as a variety, and thoſe that like it not may make uſe of the common way, however the one may ſerve to prove the truth of the other. &c.*

Note that if you deſire to know how far the Direction of any Significator is come at any certain point of time, Turn thoſe years and dayes into degrees and minutes according to the uſual manner in Directions, which add to the Obliqre Aſcenſion or deſcenſion of your Significator. And Lastly, Finde what degrees and minutes of the Ecliptique correſponds thereunto, and thus you may eaſily know

know the progreſs of any Significator, in any propounded year, &c. which is but the Converſe to the method of Rectification of a Nativity by Accidents.

Here it may be expected that I ſhould Inſert a general Catalogue of all the Directions belonging to the Nativity but ſince the ſight thereof can be uſeful to no man except to the Native, I forbear. and the rather becauſe I have laid ſo large a foundation, as to the Calculation of the ſame, or any other Geniture whatſoever.

Thus I have ſhewed in as plain a manner as 'tis poſſible, how to direct by Trigonometry, *which is the moſt curious, and exact, and to be preferred before the Tabular way, for doubtleſs had the Antients been acquainted with ſuch eaſie wayes as have in our dayes been found out (eſpecially in Logarithmetical Calculations) they would never have taken that pains to make the Tables of Directions, as thoſe of* Regiomontanus *and* Argol, (Viz.) *of Oblique Aſcenſions with, and without Latitude of Poſitions, and Aſcenſional Differences, &c. Which conſidering the trouble of making proportions, and of Parallel and Lateral entrances, are altogether as laborious as to Direct by the Canon, which is abundantly more Artificial, Portable. and Convenient, and gives you the Declination and Right Aſcenſion with Latitude at three Operations (as hath been ſhewed,) the Aſcen. Differ at one facile Operation, and Conſequently the Oblique Aſcenſion or Deſcenſion under any Elevation, with much facility.*

I know no publique profeſſor about this City of London, *that underſtands (as yet) this way of Direction, except my loving friend, Mr.* William Wallſgrave, *that formerly profeſſed Aſtrology in ſeveral places in and about*

the same. He indeed is well acquainted with this method of Direction (as also in several parts of the Mathematicks, as Measuring, Surveying, Gaugeing, and many other things of good use;) and had once engaged his thoughts to the publication of the same, he also teaches and instructs all persons that desire it, any of the afore mentioned Arts, and diverse other things relating thereunto, as his bills more fully declare.

He is a practical Surveyor in the rebuilding of the City, and measures for all persons that please to make use of him, either Land, Plastering, Brick work or Carpenters worke, &c.

CHAPTER. IX.

How to Rectifie and Direct a Nativity according to the new and Natural way of that famous Mathematician, and Astronomer *John Kepler*, sent by him to the students in the Art of Nativities, [*And Intituled in his* Rudolphine *Tables*, Sportula Genethliacis Missa.]

SECTION I.

A new and demonstrative way of Direction, according to the method of J. K,

[THat Laborious Artist Mr. *T. S.* (Author and composer of the *Caroline Tables*) in his Ephemeris 1655 did

did most Ingeniously, and very Concisely explain the manner of direction, but many young Students complained they understood it not by reason of its brevity, &c. For which cause I have here endeavoured to explain it to the meanest Capacity and this I hope without the least prejudice to any person now professing the same.

1 The *Chaldeans* Rationally considered to Deduct, or bring Promittors to their Significators, by equal degrees of the Ecliptique, some by the mean Diurnal Motion of the ☉, others by the true Diurnal Motion, and a third sort by Right Ascension.

2 *Ptolomy* Rationally concluded to bring the Promittor to the like place of the Significator, by the Arch of every one of the Diurnal Motions, having weighed the like equal parts, with the Arch of the Æquator, which will concur or agree with any of them.

3 *Regiomontanus* did rationally determine as aforesaid, to deduce the Promittor to the same Circle of Position in which the Significator was, although he would not alwayes drive or constrain it to the same part of the Circle which it kept.

4 *Lastly*, The learned *Kepler* saith, he would willingly have experience judge in the Case, to determine between these wayes, and farther affirmes that it is the part of Revilers, or the weak judgement of the Gredulous if they despise the admoniſher, since he declares it impossible by trial to come so near as minutes, although we may suppose the nearest Knot or juncture of time.

There is a course of all causes of humane affairs by Directions alone, if so be you will grant some other causes to intervene. Therefore *Kepler* guarding himself with the

Examples of Predeceſſors, (not by experience attained) thinks it a thing Rational to bring the Significators in order of the Sines, to their Promittors by the proportion of a Natural day to one year. Namely if for every one year the place of the ☉ be added, &c.

And ſo *Kepler* goes on to Examples from an Illuſtrious perſons Geniture, and performes his operations by the *Rudolphine Tables* working out the directions by the ☉s *Anomaly* and *Apogæan* Co-Æquated, &c. making the ☉ the ground and foundation of all his work. What he performes by *Anomaly* and *Apogæon* of the ☉ may much eaſier be effected by an Ephemeris, and no leſs exact, as I ſhall (in the next place) immediately ſhew, by plain Rules, and Examples as followeth in the next Section.

SECTION II.

How to Rectifie a Nativity by Accidents, and make them Correſpond with Directions.

Firſt collect a Table of the ☉s Diurnal Motion for 60 or 70 dayes after the Birth, and this ſhall be the Arches of Direction for ſo many years, &c.

To Rectifie the Aſcendent.

[*The* RULE.] 1 Having the Yeares and dayes of an Accident, for the years account to many dayes from the Nativity in the aforeſaid Table (making proportion for the odd dayes) and note what Signe, Degree, and Minute the ☉ is then poſited in.

2 Take the Right Ascension of the ☉ in that place, (your figure being before set to the estimate time) and also the Oblique Ascension of your elected Promissor with Latitude (as is usual if he have any) under the Pole of the place of Birth.

3 *Lastly*, Substract the aforesaid R.A. of ☉ from the Obl. Ascen. of your Promittor (which is most agreeable to the Nature of the Accident) and 270 d. added thereunto, and the Residue shall be the R. A. of time from noon in the Radix Rectified.

An Example from the precedent Nativity.

Married, aged 24 years 162 dayes, the Ascen. directed to the Body of ♀, &c.

♀ in ♍ 6d 32′ *Lat, Sept.* 0 30	*Ob. Asc. under pole*	d ′ 51 27	146 25
unto which add 3 quarters of the Circle			270 00
and you have the R. A. of the Dir. of the M.C. with Circle.			416 25

Then account forward in your prepared Table in the Margent 24 years (in the last collume,) and there I finde the ☉s place in [15 d. 19′ ♏] *Now because the 4th day at noon the ☉ exceeds his Radical place* [26′] *deduct 26′ from 15 d. 19′ and there remains* [14 d. 53′ ♏] *the ☉s true direction for 24 years.*

Again for the 162 dayes, I repair to the Proportional Table at the end of this Chapter, and there I seek the ☉ Diur-

From ☉ Mob. 4 1643. at noon

da	☉ *place*		*ye*
4	21 ♎	19	0
8	25	18	4
12	29	17	8
16	3 ♏	17	12
20	7	17	16
21	8	17	17
22	9	18	18
23	10	18	19
24	11	18	20
25	12	18	21
26	13	19	22
27	14	19	23
28	15	19	24
29	16	20	25
30	17	20	26
31	18	21	27
November.			
1	19	22	28
2	20	22	29
3	21	23	30
4	22	23	31
5	23	24	32
and so on.			

Diurnal motion at 24 dayes from the Birth, Viz. 61′ at top in the laſt Collume, in which I ſearch for 162 dayes which I finde not exactly at one entrance but at two entrances I finde the given Dayes againſt 25′ and 2′ in the firſt Collume, ſo that 27′ anſwers to 162 dayes, add this 27′ to the aforeſaid [14 d. 53′ ♏] *and it produces* [15 d 20′ ♏] *whoſe Right Aſcenſion is* 222 d. 51′ *which ſubſtracted out of the above mentioned* [416 d. 25′] *there remains* 193 d, 34′] *the Right Aſcenſion of time from Noon in the Radix Rectified, which converted into time* [*by the Table for that purpoſe,* pag 47.] *given* 12 *hor.* 54′ 16″ P. M *weich is but* 2′ 4″ *of time different from the former Rectification.*

2

If you would Rectifie a Nativity by an Accident compared with the M. C. *directed, &c.*

[*The* RULE] 1 Finde the Promiſſors R. A. (*as is uſual.*)

2 Subſtract the R. A. of the ☉ agreeable to the year and day of the Accident (as before ſhewed) from the R. A. of your Promiſſor (by adding the whole Circle if ſubſtraction cannot be made) and the remainder is the R. A. of the time from Noon in the Radix rectified as before.

Example 2.

Aged 17 *years* 144 *dayes an Accident happened compared with the M. C. ad* □ ☽ *cum Lat.*

R *A. of the* □ *of* ☽ *(before ſhewed) in* 21 d. 31′ ♓
with 1 d. 17′ *South Lat. is.* 49 26

Then for 17 *years I account forward in the prepared* Table

Table, and againſt 17 years I finde [8*d.* 17′ ♏] *from which I ſubſtract the aforeſaid* 26′ (*for the Exceſs of the* ☉*s place in the Radix*) *and there remains* [7 *d*, 51′ ♏.] *Again for the odd* 144 *dayes under* Diurnal Motion ☉ 61′ (*which the* ☉ *had at that time*) *in the proportional Table, I finde* 24′ *to anſwer, which added to* [7 *d.* 51′ ♏] *makes* [8 *d.* 15′ ♏] *whoſe R. A. is* 215 *d.* 52′, *which ſubſtracted from the R. A. of the* □ *of the* ☽ *and* 360 *d.* Viz. [409 *d*, 26′] *there remains* [193 *d* 34′] *the R. A. of the time from Noon, in the Radix Rectified as before.*

[*Note that the Directing of the* M. C. *or Aſcendent according to this method, is not much different from the uſual old beaten way, &c,*

But the direction of the ☉, ☽, ⊕, ♄, ♃, ♂, ♀, *and* ☿, *will be found ſometimes conſiderably different, which makes many perſons apt to ſuſpect the truth hereof. But the reaſon is, theſe laſt are Directed in the Ecliptique the other* (*viz.* M. C. *and Aſcendent*) *to promittors in the Æquator, as ſhall be ſhewed.*]

3

If you would Rectifie a Nativity by the ⊕ (*which is only the Diſtance of the* ☉ *from the* ☽ *projected from the Aſcendent.*

[*The RULE*] 1. Subſtract the ☉ from the ☽ as is uſual, &c.

2 Subſtract the diſtance of the Luminaries from the Signe deg and min. where the Promittors Body or Aſpect falls, the Remainer is called the Aſcen. Direct.

3 Take the Oblique Aſcenſion of this Remainer under the Lat. or Pole of the place, and unto it add 180 *d.* (which

is called the Direction of the M. C. with the Circle).

4. *Lastly.* Substract the R. A. of the ☉ agreeable to the time of the Accident (found as before directed) out of this last found number, and the remainer is the R. A. of time, P. M. in the Radix rectified, as in the other.

Example 3.

Suppose in the Exemplary Nativity the Native being Aged 27 years 323 dayes should have an Accident happen agreeable to the ⊕ ad □ ♂, &c.

	S	d	′
The □ of ♂ in ♈ Viz.	9	9	30
The Luminaries Distance substract	4	0	38
Remaines the Direct. of the Ascen. ♍	5	8	52
The Obl. Asc. of 8 d 52′ ♍ sub· Lat,		51	17
will be found to be		150	2
Add		270	0
Gives R, A, Dir. Cum Circulo		420	2

In the prepared Table against 27 yeares Answers [18d 21′ ♏] *Substract 26′ the aforesaid Exces, Rest* [17 d 55′ ♏] *then the ☉ Diurnal Motion being 61′, I finde by the proportional Table that 54′ answers to 323 dayes, this 54′ add to* [17 d. 55′ ♏] *makes* [18 d. 49′] *whose R. A, is* [226 d. 28′] *which substracted from* [420 d 2′] *before found, Leaves* 193 d. 34′ *the R. A. of the Time P. M. in the Radix, as in the rest.* Et sic de cæteris.

These

These things being premised, Directing will be very easie, being no more but the converse work; as wil appear by the Examples following.

SECTION III.

How to Direct the five *Hyliagiacals* (and the other Planets) to their several promittors in any Geniture. Secund. *Johan. Kepler.*

To Direct the Ascendent.

The RULE.

1 TAke the Oblique Ascension of your Promissor after the usual manner, with Latitude (if he have any) under the Elevation of the Pole of the place of Birth.

2 Add to this Oblique Ascension found, 270 deg. and from their sum substract the R. A. of time from noon in the Radix, and the remainder is the R. A. of the Direction of the ☉.

3 Binde the Signe degree and minute that answers to this R. A. ☉.

4 Search for the ☉ in this place in your prepared Table, or the nearest less, and for every day from the Birth account one year, (making proportion for the odd minutes) and you have the year and day desired.

Or thus, Having the Obl. Ascen. of the Promissor, substract from thence the R. A of the time from noon in the Radix, increased by a Quadrant, or 90 deg. (adding the Circle

Circle to the aforesaid Oblique *Ascension* if need require; and the Remainer will be the *R. A.* of the Direction of the ☉. then proceed as before. *The like may be observed in* ♁.

Example 4.

	d	′
Ascend. ad ♂ *of* ♀ *&c.*		
The Obl. Ascen. of ♀ *cum Lat.*		
and 170 *d. added was.*	416	25
R. A. of time from noon substract.	193	34
Rests R, A. Direct ☉	222	51

Or thus.

The Oblique Ascension ♂ ♀ *and* 360 *d. is*	506 d.	25′
R. A. of time P. M. and 90 *d. subst.*	283	34
Remains R. A. of the Direction of the ☉ *as before.*	222	51

Unto which answers [15 *d.* 20′ ♏]
Unto which I must now add 26′ *for the excess of the* ☉ *placein the Radix, and that produces* [15 *d.* 46′ ♏] *which I seek in the fitted Table, and finde the next less against* 24 *years* [15 *d.* 19′ ♏,] *and the Diurnal Motion of the* ☉ *in that place is* 61′ *the difference between* [15 *d.* 19′ *and* 15 *d.* 46′] *is* 27′, *the dayes answering thereunto in the last Collume of the Proportion Table under* 61′ *Di. Mot. will be found* 162, *so that the Ascendent met with* ♂ ♀ *at* 24 *years* 162 *dayes as aforesaid* [For if 60′ gives one year 6 hours, 27′ will point out 162 dayes as in that Table.]

Note

[*Note that if the ☉s place at noon the day of Birth, exceeds the ☉s true Radical place (as in this our Example) add that overplus in Directions. But if it wants ſubſtract. But in Rectification obſerve the contrary, as you will better underſtand by the precedent, and ſubſequent Examples.*]

2
How to direct the M. C. &c.

[*The* RULE.] 1 Finde the R. *A.* of your Promittor (as is uſual).

2 Subſtract the R. *A.* of time from noon in the Radix, from the R. A. of the Promiſſor, and the Remainder is the R. A. of the ☉s Direction.

3 See what Signe Deg. and min. agrees thereunto.

4 Finde the ☉ in that place, either in the Ephemeris or prepared Table, and work in all reſpects as before in the Aſcendent.

Example 5. M. C. ad. □ ☽ cum Lat.

	d	′
R. *A.* of the □ of the ☽ *in* 21 d. 31′ ♉ Lat. 1 d. 17′ *South.*	49	26
add the Circle that ſubſtraction may be made	360	00
Their ſumm is	409	26
R. *A.* of time from noon ſubſtract	193	34
Remaines the R. *A.* Dir. ☉	215	52

To which anſwers 8 d. 15′ ♏. *Unto this add the exceſs*

less 26′ in the Radix, and that produces [8 d. 41′ ♏] *the next less in the fitted Table is* [8 d. 17′ ♏] *to which answers* 17 *years. The difference between* [8 d. 41′ *and* 8 d. 17′ ♏] *is* 24′ *and the Diurnal motion of* ☉ 61′ *which in the Proportional Table in the last Collume thereof points out* 144 *dayes, so the* M. C. *came to the* □ *of* ☽ *at* 17 *years* 144 *dayes, &c.*

3
How the ♁ *is Directed.*

" [*The* RULE] 1. Take the true Longitude of the Promittor. (and neither Right nor Oblique Ascension as in the 2 former.)

2 Substract the ☉ place from the ☽s place in the Radix and thereby you have their distance &c.

3 Substract this distance in [*S. Deg: and Min.*] from the Longitude of the *Promissor* (by adding 30 d. or one whole Signe if Substraction cannot be made.)

4 Note their difference (which is called the direction of the Ascendeat) and alwayes take the Oblique Ascension of this difference under the Lat. of the place of Birth, (notwithstanding the ♁ be posited in the Descending part of Heaven) and add 270 d. thereunto which produces the R. A. of the Direction of the *M. C.* with the Circle.

5 As in Directing of the Ascendent, so here substract the *R.* A of time from noon in the Radix from this last found number, (abating the Circle here and every where else if need require) and the Remainder is the R. A. of the Direction of the ☉ desired, by which you may finde the Arch of Direction as before Directed, &c.

Example

Example 6.

The ♁ Directed to the □ of ♂ in 9 d. 30′ ♍.

The Luminaries distance ſubſtracted from the place of the Promiſſor, leaves (as before ſhewed) 5 *s.* 8 *d* 52′ viz. *in* ♍ *the Direction of the Aſcendent, the Oblique Aſcenſion of that point was before found* 150 *d.* 2′ *which added to* 270 *d. produces* 420 *d.* 2′ *for the R. A. of the direction of the M. C. with the Circle, &c. from which ſubſtract the time from noon in the Radix* 193 *d.* 34′ *the Remainder is* 226 *d.* 28′ *(viz. the R. A of the Direction* ☉*) unto which agrees* 18 *d.* 49′ ♏ *in the Ecliptique, add the* ☉*s exceſs* 26′ *produces* [19 *d.* 15′ ♏,] *the next leſs in the fitted Table is* [18 *d.* 21′ ♏] *which wants* 54′*s and the* ☉ *Diurnal Motion* 61′ [18 *d.* 21′] *points out* 27 *years and* 54′ 323 *dayes, So the* ♁ *meets with the* □ *of* ♂ *at* 27 *years* 323 *dayes, according to this manner of Calculation, &c.*

4

How to Direct the ☉ *to Promittors.*

[*The* RULE] 1 Having the exact Longitude of your Promittors Body or Aſpect unto the ☉ place forward in the Ephemeris (or prepared Table) account the dayes from the Birth (making alſo proportion for the odd minutes) and you have with much eaſe the Arke of Direction deſired.

Example 7.

The ☉ Directed to the □ of ♑ in 3 d, 26′ ♎ &c. *add* 26′ *the exceſs, the ſumm is* 3 *d.* 52′ ♎, *I finde*

the next less in the fitted Table [3 *d.* 17′ ♍] *against* 12 *years, take* 3 *d.* 17′ *from* 3 *d.* 52′ ♍ *there remaines* 35′ *and the Diurnal motion of* ☉ 60′, *this* 35′ *gives in the Proportional Table under D. M.* 60′ *Collume* 213 *dayes, and so the* ☉ *met with the* □ *of* ♄ *at* 12 *years* 213 *dayes, &c.*

5

The ☽ *is thus Directed: and after the same manner all the rest of the Planets,* viz. ♄, ♅, ♂, ♀, *and* ☿ *to their several Promittors. Therefore observe this brief Rule following for all.*

[*The* RULE] 1 Substract the ☽s place, or any of the aforesaid Planets in S. D. and M. from the place of the Promissor, the remainer is called the Arke of Direction. &c.

2 To which add the Radical place of the ☉, and the Summ is the true place in Signe, deg. and min, of the Direction of the ☉.

3 As in all the former, finde how many dayes from the Birth, the ☉ touches that point of the Ecliptique, by making proportions before directed for the odd minutes, and you have the years and dayes of the Direction desired.

Examp

Example 8.

Of the ☽ ad ☌ ♀ in 6 deg. 32′ ♓.

	S.	d.	′	
The ☌ of ♀ falls in ♓	11	6	32	
Substract the Radical place ☽	10	21	31	
Remaines the Arke of Direction ☽	0	15	01	
Add the Radicall place of ☉	6	20	53	
True place of the ☉ Direct	7	5	54	vit ♏
Add the Excess of the ☉s place, &c.	0	0	26	
Produces ♏ 6 d. 20.	7	6	20	

The Sunns place next less in the Ephemeris (from which the fitted Table was taken) is [♏ 6 d 17′] *against the* 19*th day, to which agrees* 15 *dayes (or rather yeares) from the Birth, the difference of* [6 d 17′ *and* 6 d, 20′] *is* 0 d. 3′, ☉ *Diurnal motion* 60′, *which in the proportional Table points out* 18 *dayes odd houres (which unless they are near* 24 *alwayes omit) So the* ☽ *came to the* ☌ *of* ♀ *in the Ecliptique, according to this method of Direction at* 15 *years* 18 *dayes, &c.*

I have been the larger in these Examples, because I would make it easie to be understood by the meaner Artists.

Lastly,

If you would know the Direction of the *Hyligiacalls* for any propounded year, as suppose for the Natives 27th year Compleat, work thus.

1 *For the* ☉ (*which all along is the Basis of the*

work) Account 27 dayes from the Birth in the fitted Table of the ☉'s place at which time the ☉ was 18·d 21′ in ♏, from which subſtract the 26′ of Exceſs on the ☉ place in the Radix, and you have the true Direction of the ☉ in ♏ 17 d. 55′ for 27 years compleat.

For the ☽	S.	d.	′
The Direction of the ☉ is ♏ or,	7	17	55
From which ſubſtract his Radical place	6	20	53
Remaines the Arch of Direction	0	27	2
Unto which add the Radical place of the ☽ or any other Planet	11	21	31
The Summ is the true Direction of ☽ which falls in ♈ 18 d 33′	12	18	33

3 For the Direction of the M. C. Aſcendent, and ⊕ operate thus by the Tables of Right, and Oblique Aſcenſion, as before in the Examples you are Directed.

	d	′
The ☉ direction is in ♏ 17 d 55′ the R. A. of that Point is	235	26
Add the R. Aſcen of time P M. in the Radix agreeable to 12 h 54′ 16″	193	34
The Summ rejecting 360 d is	69	00

which is the R. A of the Direction of M. C. to which Anſwers ♊ 10 d 37′ and ſo far the M. C. is directed the 27th year Compleat. Add 90 d. to 69 d. 0′ you have the Oblique Aſcenſion of the Direction of the Horoſcope or Aſcendent. Viz. 159 d. 0′ to which anſwers about 15d 5′ of ♐ for the Direction of the Aſcendent, unto

which

which add the distance of the Luminaries in the Radix viz 4 Signes, 0 deg. 38′ their summ is 9 S. 15 d 43′ for the Direction of ☉, Viz. ☍, &c.

To Conclude this Chapter.

Let those that would direct a Nativity this way, draw their work into this following method, Viz.

1 *for the Ascendent, Rule a Quarto or Folio page into 6 Collumes, and in the first, place the Aspects of the Promissors, in the second Collume the Longitude in the Signes wherein those Aspects fall, in the the third Collume the Oblique Ascension of the Promissors, in the fourth Collume the R. A. of the Direction of ☉ (produced by Substracting the R. A. of time from Noon in the Radix, from the Oblique Ascension of the Promissor, and 270 d. &c.) In the fifth Collume place the Signe, degree and minute Correspondent to the R. A. of the Dir. of ☉, which is termed the true Direction of the ☉, and in the 6th and last the Years and Dayes Correspondent, pointing out the time of the Accident.*

2 *For the M. C. there should be 6 Collumes also; and in all respects ordered as the Ascendent, Except the third Collume, which must contain the R. A of the Promissor, as the other did the Oblique.*

3 *The ☉ will require 7 Collumes, (1) the Aspects, (2) the Longitudes (3) the Directions of the Ascendent. (4) the Oblique Ascen. (5) the R. A. of the Direction of the ☉. (6) the point of the Ecliptique correspondent. (Viz. Direction of the ☉) (7) Lastly, the Yeares and dayes of the Accident.*

4 *The ☽ needs but 3 Collumes, Viz (1) Aspects, (2) Longitude. (3) Yeares and dayes, &c.*

5 The ☽ and the reſt of the Planets muſt have 5 Collumes. (1) the Aſpects of the Promittors. (2) their Longitude in ♑ d and m (3) the Arke of Direct. (4) the Direction of the ☉ in Sig deg. and min. (5) the time of the Accident.

And thus the work will be diſpoſed into a neat handſom form and the more fit for uſe.

But for ordering of the work in directing the old way, that large Example of a Speculum of Directions in Mr. Lilly's Introduction is as Methodical, and Artificial as may be: That forme p'g. 165, and 166, in the Doctrine of Nativities is now moſt frequently uſed by publique Profeſſors.

A Table of the dayes proportional (in Direct.) to each min. of the Sunns Diurnal motion.

Min	D. M ☉ 57′		D M ☉ 58′		D. m ☉ 59′		D. m ☉ 60′		D M ☉ 61′	
	day	hor	Da.	H.	Da.	Ho	D.	Ho.	Da.	Ho.
1	6	10	6	7	6	5	6	2	6	0
2	12	20	12	14	12	9	12	4	11	23
2	19	5	18	21	18	14	18	6	17	23
4	25	15	25	5	24	18	24	8	23	23
5	32	1	31	12	30	23	30	11	29	23
6	38	11	37	19	37	3	36	13	35	22
7	44	21	44	2	43	8	42	15	41	22
8	51	6	50	9	49	13	48	17	47	22
9	57	16	56	16	55	17	54	19	53	21
10	64	2	62	23	61	22	60	21	59	21
15	96	3	94	11	92	21	91	8	89	20
20	128	4	125	23	123	20	121	18	119	18
25	160	5	157	11	154	18	152	5	149	17
30	192	6	188	22	185	17	182	15	179	15
35	224	6	220	10	216	16	213	2	209	14
40	256	7	251	22	247	15	243	12	239	12
45	288	9	283	9	278	14	273	22	269	11
50	320	9	314	21	309	13	304	9	299	9
55	352	10	346	9	340	11	334	19	329	8
57	365	6	358	23	352	20	346	23	330	7
58			365	6	359	1	353	1	336	7
59					365	6	359	4	342	6
60							365	6	359	6
61									365	6

This Table was thus made, viz. (by the Goulden Rule) As the ☉s Diurnal Motion is to 365 dayes 6 hours, or 8766 hours, So is 1 min. to the dayes and hours desired, &c.

CHAPTER X.

Of Revolutions, &c,

§ 1.

What is meant by a Revolution.

IT is no more but the true position of the Heavens for that very moment or punct of time that the ☉ or ☽ (or any other Planet) returns to their Radical places, in any Nativity. &c *Or more particularly thus,* A Revolution is the Sunns Annual Conversion, or return to that same point of the Ecliptique (*Viz. S. deg.* and *min.*) wherein he was found at the Birth of any Native, or first foundation of any matter, &c.

The ☉s true place in any Nativity is the basis or foundation of the whole work, and therefore his place (above all the rest of the *Planets*) ought to be exactly Calculated, for one minutes errour in his place produces 24′ in time, because in 24′ of time, the ☉ motion is but (about) one minute of a degree &c,

§ 2.

§ 2.
How to obtain the true Figure of a *Solar* Revolution.

THE moſt certain way is from exact Aſtronomical Tables, Firſt. *To compute the ☉s true place in the Radix, then for the yearly Revolution of the ☉ Calculate his place for the noon time of the day, before and after the Birth, and thereby finde his true Diurnal Motion, then to know what hour and minute he returns to his Radical place, conſult the 7th* Rule, *pag.* 30. *hereof, and the Examples by the Logiſtical Logarithmes there inſerted, and you have your deſire.*

Or you may Æquate for the true time, &c. From the ☉s Diurnal motion, taken out of ſome exact Ephemeris provided his Radical place were taken from the ſame foundation (or Calculated from the ſame Tables from which this Ephemeris was Extracted) otherwayes 'tis Irrational and Abſurd ſo to do.

But becauſe either of theſe wayes may be thought too troubleſome to be performed in the ſetting many Revolutions together, I have therefore inſerted this following Revolutional Table, with its uſe, which performes the work with much eaſe and exactneſs. It was Calculated from the *Radolphine Tables*, by that eminent *Artiſt Joan. Baptiſta Morinus*, (ſo often mentioned in this tract) and contracted (from two Folio pages where they were Calculated to Seconds) into this portable forme, that it might not too much exceed the limits of theſe ſmall pages.

A perpetual Table of the Sunns Revolution according to *Ticho Brah's Hypotheſis* and

year	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	year
anō	H. m	H. m	H. m	H. m	H m	H. m	H. m.	H, m	anō
0	5 4	11 36	17 24	23 12	5 0	10 48	16 36	22 25	360
10	5 48	11 36	17 24	23 12	5 0	10 48	16 36	22 24	350
20	5 48	11 36	17 24	23 12	5 1	10 49	16 37	22 24	340
30	5 48	11 36	17 25	23 13	6 1	10 49	16 37	22 26	330
40	5 48	11 37	17 25	23 13	5 1	10 50	16 38	22 27	3 0
50	5 48	11 37	17 25	23 13	5 2	10 50	16 39	22 28	310
60	5 49	11 37	17 26	23 14	5 2	10 51	16 40	22 29	300
70	5 49	11 37	17 26	23 15	5 3	19 52	16 41	22 31	290
80	5 49	11 38	17 26	23 16	5 4	10 53	16 42	22 32	280
90	5 49	11 38	17 27	23 16	5 5	10 54	16 43	22 33	270
100	5 49	11 38	17 27	23 17	5 6	10 55	16 44	22 34	260
110	5 49	11 39	17 28	23 18	5 6	10 56	16 45	22 35	250
120	5 49	11 39	17 28	23 18	5 7	10 56	16 46	22 36	240
130	5 50	11 39	17 29	23 19	5 8	10 57	16 47	22 37	230
140	5 50	11 39	17 29	23 19	5 8	10 58	16 47	22 38	220
150	5 50	11 39	17 29	23 19	5 9	10 58	16 48	22 38	210
160	5 50	11 40	17 29	23 19	5 9	10 59	16 48	22 39	100
170	5 50	11 40	17 29	23 19	5 9	10 59	16 49	22 39	190
180	5 50	11 40	17 30	23 19	5 9	10 59	16 49	22 39	180
									g

accomodated to the motion of the Apogeon the Rudolphine Tables in years compleat.

yea	9		10		20		30		40		50		60		70		yea
anō	H.	m	H.	m	H.	m	H	m	H	m	H	m	H	m	H.	m	anō
0	4	12	0	9	20	1	6	1	16	2	2	2	12	2	22	3	360
10	4	13	10	1	20	1	6	2	16	2	2	3	12	4	22	4	350
20	4	13	10	1	20	2	6	3	16	4	2	5	12	6	22	7	340
30	4	14	10	2	20	2	6	5	16	5	2	8	12	10	22	12	330
40	4	14	10	3	20	5	6	8	16	10	2	13	12	15	22	18	320
50	4	15	10	4	20	7	6	11	16	15	2	19	12	22	22	26	310
60	4	17	10	5	20	10	6	15	16	21	2	26	12	31	22	36	300
70	4	18	10	7	20	13	6	20	16	26	2	33	12	39	22	46	290
80	4	19	10	8	20	16	6	24	16	31	2	41	12	49	22	57	280
90	4	21	10	10	20	19	6	29	16	38	2	48	12	58	23	7	270
100	4	22	10	11	20	22	6	33	16	44	2	56	13	7	23	18	260
110	4	23	10	13	20	25	6	38	16	51	3	3	13	16	23	29	250
120	4	24	10	14	20	28	6	42	16	56	3	10	13	25	23	39	240
130	4	26	10	15	20	31	6	46	17	1	3	16	13	31	23	47	230
140	4	27	10	16	20	33	6	49	17	5	3	22	13	38	23	54	220
150	4	27	10	17	20	34	6	52	17	9	3	26	13	43	0	0	210
160	4	28	10	18	20	36	6	53	17	11	3	29	13	47	0	4	200
170	4	28	10	18	20	37	6	55	17	13	3	31	13	49	0	8	190
180	4	29	10	18	20	37	6	55	17	12	3	32	13	51	0	9	180

A Table of the motion of the Sunns *Apogeon* for hundreds of years after Christ, Calculated from the Rudolphine Tables

An Chr	S.	D.	M
1000	2	05	28
1100	2	27	11
1200	2	25	53
1300	3	0	36
1400	3	2	19
1500	3	4	1

An.Chr.	S.	D.	M.
1600	3	5	44
1700	3	7	27
1800	3	9	10
1900	3	10	52
2000	3	12	35
3000	3	29	42

The motion of the Sunns *Apogeon* (or *Aphelion*) for every single Year. &c.

year.	min.
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	8
9	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16

year.	min.
17	17
18	18
19	20
20	21
21	22
22	23
23	24
24	25
25	26
26	27
27	28
28	29
29	30
30	31
31	32

year.	Deg. m.
32	0 33
33	0 34
34	0 35
35	0 36
40	0 41
45	0 46
50	0 51
55	0 56
60	1 03
70	1 12
80	1 22
90	1 32
100	1 43
200	3 25
300	5 8

The use of the Table in setting a Revolutional Figure.

1 *Finde the* ☉*s* Apogæon *to the year of Birth by the last little Table, thus, Suppose I would have the* ☉*s Apog. for* 1641. (Viz. *the year of Birth in the proposed Genisture*) *against* 1600 *I finde* 3 *s.* 5 *d.* 44′ *Against* 40 *yeares, and* 1 *year* 42′, *which added to the former makes* 3 *s.* 6 *d.* 26′ *for the* ☉ *Apog. desired.*

2 *Substract this Apog. from the* ☉*s Longit. at Birth* (*by adding the Circle where substraction cannot be made*) *and the Remainder is his Anomaly.*

3 *With this Anomaly enter the first or last Collume of the Revolutional Table where you have it set down to every* 10 *d and take the neareſt.* (*or make proportion, which Exactneſs is here needleſs, as you may easily perceive by the Table it selfe,*) *and under the Teares of age compleat at head you have Certain hours and minutes, in the Angle of meeting to be added to the time P. M. in the Radix,* (*casting away* 24*hours if it exceed*) *and their Summ is the true time of the Revolution* (*or return to his Radical place*) *for which you are to set your Figure by a Table of houses or otherwise, &c.*

Note that by reason of the Leap year the Revolution may not alwayes happen on the same day of the Month the Radix was on, but by the Sunns place in your Ephemeris you may easily descern which day it was.

Example.

I would set a Revolutional Figure to the Exemplary Geniture pag. 71 *for the Natives* 29*th year Current, beginning* October 1667. *&c.*

The

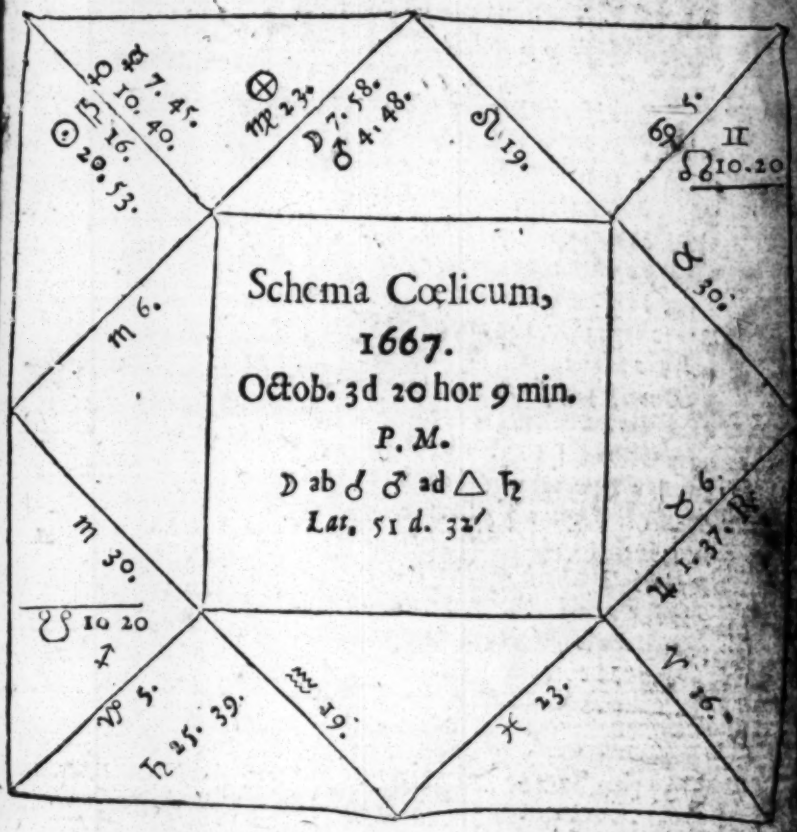
The ☉ Apogeon (by the first Rule) was found in ♋, or 3 Signes 6 d. 26′, which substracted from the ☉ Radical place in ♎, Viz. 6 S, 20 d. 53′, there remains 3 S. 14 d. 27′, that is 104 d. 27′, the minutes are inconsiderable in this matter. therefore I reject them and enter with 104 deg. in the first Collume of the second Table and I finde the neareſt thereunto is 100d the which I may well take; (for 10 d Anomaly makes but 2′ difference in 10 years) and against 100d Anomaly I have a Revolution Table particular to this Geniture, as in the Margent, [The like you may do for any other. &c.]

pe.	H.	m
1	5	49
2	11	38
3	17	27
4	23	17
5	5	6
6	10	55
7	16	44
8	22	34
9	4	22
10	10	11
20	20	22
30	6	33
40	16	44
50	2	56
60	13	7
70	23	18

Then for the time of the Revolution, against 20 years I finde 20 h. 22′ and against 6 years 10 ho. 55′ their summ is 31 ho 17′ unto which add 12h 52′ the time P. M. in the Radix, and the aggregate is 44 hor. 9′, from which abate 24 h. and there remains 20 h. 9′ for the true time of the Revolution which is alwayes to be set for the Latitude of the Natives present abode, and not for the place of Birth. except the Native inhabits there.

A

A Figure of the ☉ Return to his Radical place for the Natives 27 Year Current.



§ 3

How to judge of a Revolutional Figure.

Having Obtained the true Position of the Heavens at the time of the Suns return, &c.

Con-

1 *Consider what agreement there is between the Radical and the Revolutional Figures, if you finde them in* ✶ *or* △ *to each other, and the Planets in the Revolution beholding their Radical places friendly, these are arguments that the year will prove fortunate to the Native, and this the more if no bad direction be then in force.*

2 *But if the Figures chance to be in* □ *or* ☍ *to each other, and the Planets in the Revolution in the same Aspect to their Radical places, judge the contrary, that the Natives Actions and Endeavours for the succeeding year will be no way successful, but (for the most part) very Cross and Unfortunate &c.*

3 *In fine, the more the* 2 *Figures do sympathize and agree together, the more fortunate and happy will the years actions prove.*

But if you finde no Harmony between them, judge the contrary. And Note this by the way, that if the Nativity be bad. [Viz. The Planets weak and ill located therein,*] a Revolution (though it agree never so well with the Radical Figure) can promise or effect little good to the Native. (unless the Native can live above the common Principle which generally acts in men) for an accidental good, (as my loving friend Mr J. G. well notes) will prove too weak to rebate the force of an Essential and grounded evil.*

For the better judgeing of a Revolution, observe these few general *Aphorismes* following,

1 *When the Lord of the Ascendent of the Revolution shall be in good aspect with the Lord of the second in the radix, or the Lord of the Ascendent in the Radix in the same Position with the Lord of the second in the Revolution, this*

this denotes profit to the Native that year by his own proper industry and labour.

2 If the Revolutional Ascendent be vitiated by an infortunate Planet, either by Body or Aspect, this signifies much Detriment and affliction to happen to the Native that year, of the nature of the afflicting Planet, consideration had to the Sign and house he is posited in.

3 The Lord of the Ascendent of the Radix being strong and well located in the Revolution, and in friendly aspect with the Fortunes, promises health of body to the Native, and much good to attend his affairs that year, and this the rather if the aforesaid Significators are posited in good places of the Figure.

4 The Lord of the second in the Revolution in the Ascendent, or the ☉ posited in a good place of the Figure, and well beheld, as in the place of Fortuna's Planet in the Radix; this declares much profit to the Native that year, and this without any great matter of trouble ob iam dicta.

5 When in a Revolution you finde the Lord of the Ascendent thereof much afflicted, or in Combustion of the ☉, this portends much affliction to the Native that year, and that he shall unavoidably suffer much loss and detriment in one kinde or other, unless the Lord of the Ascendent happen to be in his own Essential Dignities; if so, he will be able to struggle in the midst of dangers, and receive the less prejudice, but if he be posited in his detriment, and afflicted as aforesaid, then you may positively conclude his troubles will that year prove Exceeding great.

6 The Lunar varies both, or either of them ill affected in a Revolution, and much ill fate thereto, threatens Detri-

ment in Body, or Estate, or both to the Natives Father and Mother if the ☉ be concerned judge the Father, if the ☽ the Mother of the Native, &c.

7 See whether either of the Luminaries happen to suffer an Eclipse in, or near their own Radical places, or in any of the Angles of the Genitures, this is an argument of great and eminent danger to happen to the Natives body, especially if it fall in the Radical Ascendent; for oftentimes it threatens death to the Native, unless other good Configurations strongly intercede, &c.

8 Sol in the Revolution being posited in □ or ☍ to the Radical Ascendent, or the Lord thereof, is a certain note of many troubles to incur to the Native the ensuing year, probably he may be injured by his Father, or suffer by the frowns of some great person, or men, or man in power, of which he is (upon such a position) cautioned to beware.

9 The Infortunes in ☌ in the M. C. in a Revolution, bids the Native beware of some dangerous fall from a high place, loss of Honour and Repute, Damage and Detriment to the Natives Mother, &c.

10 If the Lord of the Ascendent in the Revolution happen to be much afflicted in the 8th house, and no way assisted by the Fortunes it intimates danger of Death unto the Native and this the more certain if a bad Direction happen at the same time Judge the same if you finde ☽ in ☌ of ♄ and ♄ behold the Ascendent, or Lord thereof by □ or ☍

Lastly, If you finde all the Planets well posited strong and potent in the Revolution, this denotes much good to succeed to the Native in that years actions, but if the

are found weake, and posited in bad places of the Figure judge the contrary; consideration (all along) being had of the Concordancy or Discordancy that is between the Radix and Revolutional Figures, as was noted before.

Here I might add many more *Aphorismes* as to the judging a Revolution, but these are the most significant, and sufficient to enable an ingenious Lover of Art how to judge upon any such Figure. Those that would read more may satisfie themselves from such Authors (both Antient and Modern) that have written Copiously hereof, and so proceed to give a right judgement upon the precedent Revolutional Figure, according to the Rules before express.

1 *The Figure it self is (nearly) in Quartil to the Radix.*

2 *The M. C. thereof is the opposite place of the ☽ (who had great dignities in the M. C. of the Radix.)*

3 *☌ and ☽ are in ☌ in the M. C. of the Revolution, upon the Radical place of ♀ Lady of the 10th in the Radix.*

4 *♃ is in □ to his Radical place, and in ☍ to the Revolutional Ascendent.*

5 *Cauda Draconis is posited in the fourth house of the Radix and second of the Revolution, nor far from the Radical place of ☉, and ♃ upon the Radical place of ♄.*

These things considered, are very strong arguments in Art that the year should (for the most part) prove very unfortunate and inauspicious to the Native, affording but small Profit or Fame notwithstanding his utmost endeavours, and this Judgement is the more confirmed because *Sol* Lord of the 10th is weak in the 12th, but on the other side finding ☿ Lord of the Ascendent in ☌ thereunto, and both ☿ and ☽ friendly △ to ♃ who is the Disposer of ☉ in the Radix, and Lord of the second in the Revolution

this seems to mitigate the former evil threatned, to which I may add ♀ Lady of the 10th in the Radix, is returned to her own house, therein disposing of ♀ Lord of the second in the Radix, and ♄ Lord of the 4th in the Revolution is strong in ♈ and the Revolutional Ascendent, in exact △ to ♄'s Radical place; the ☉ is in ✶ to the cusp of the 10th also; And there are other things might be gathered from the Scheam, which I purposely omit. And hence Conclude, that though this Revolution portends a bad year in the general as to the Natives success and profit in his ordinary affairs in the world; yet many notable opportunities will be offered, whereby he may much advantage himself, (although with some difficulty) which may put the Native (often) as it were to a stand, or discourage him, that he proceed not so vigorously, and with so much chearfulness in his publique concerns as otherwise he would do. But let the premises be but well weighed, and seriously considered, (without further dispute) the Year in general notwithstanding all seeming obstructions) will terminate more to the Natives content then (by a slight view of the Figure) could be expected. And thus much shall suffice to be spoken of this Years Revolution.

---

§ 4.

How to Direct a Revolutional Figure.

Some have taught to Direct the ☽ *Hyligiacals in a Revolutional Figure quite round the* 12 *Signs every year, and allow* 59′ (*the* ☉ *Diurnal Motion*) *for the measure of time for a day, &c. But by this means the Revolutional Directions will happen to be the same every year* (*or one year or other thereof*) *which seems to be very absurd.*

But

But the moſt Rational way is this, (which hath been much Experienced by able Artiſts) to Direct the chief Angles of the Revolution, Viz. the M. C. and Aſcendent to their ſeveral Promittors till you come to the Cuſp of the M. C. and Aſcendent for the next years Revolution, making the difference of time between thoſe two Revolutions the meaſure of time for one Year, &c. as ſhall be cleared by Example, and in the Revolutional Directions wholly to neglect the Latitude of the Planets in their Aſpects, by reaſon the Revolution ſerves but for a Year, and all the Directions thereof terminate in the ſame ſpace of time, neither is it much material whether you take notice of odd minutes in Right or Oblique Aſcenſion, but Direct by whole degrees, or by the Tables of Houſes, which in this caſe is much more ready and eaſie, and ſufficiently exact.

Before I come to Examples, 'twill be convenient for eaſe and method ſake to inſert a neceſſary Table or two, which will be of great uſe in Directing Revolutions, as ſhall be plainly ſhewed. § 5 of this Chapter.

I

A general Revolutional table to Degrees and Minutes.

Degrees	hour		Minutes	hour	min
1	4	5	1	1	41
2	8	10	2	3	22
3	12	14	3	5	3
4	16	18	4	6	44
5	20	22	5	8	25
6	25	4	6	10	6
7	29	9	7	11	47
8	33	13	8	13	28
9	37	18	9	15	9
10	41	23	10	16	50
20	83	22	20	33	40
30	125	20	30	50	30
40	167	19	40	67	20
50	209	18	50	84	10
60	251	16	60	101	0
70	293	14			
80	335	12			
87	366	6			

A table of the dayes of the year from the Birth.

October	31	27
Novemb.	30	57
December	31	88
January	31	119
February	28	147
March	31	178
April	30	208
May	31	239
June	30	269
July	31	300
August	31	331
September	30	361
October	4	365

Note that these and the following Tables are Calculated to the Sunns mean motion, and are of general use in Revolutional Directions, the one to be used if you Direct by a Table of Right, and Oblique Ascension inserted at the end of this Book, and the other of use if you Direct by the Tables of Houses, Examples of both, follow after the Tables, from the Exemplary Scripture.

A General Table for Revolutional Directions of time.

H	0		1		2		3		4		5	
M	Da.	hor.	Da.	hor.	Da.	hor.	Da.	hor.	Da.	hor.	Da.	hor.
0	0	0	62	22	125	20	188	18	251	16	314	14
2	2	2	65	0	127	22	190	20	253	18	316	16
4	4	5	67	3	130	0	192	23	255	20	318	18
6	6	7	69	5	132	2	195	1	257	23	320	21
8	8	9	71	7	134	5	197	3	260	1	322	23
10	10	12	73	10	136	7	199	6	262	3	325	1
12	12	14	75	12	138	10	201	8	264	6	327	4
14	14	16	77	14	140	12	203	10	266	8	329	6
16	16	19	79	17	142	14	205	12	268	10	331	8
18	18	21	81	19	144	17	207	15	270	13	333	11
20	20	23	83	21	146	19	209	17	272	15	336	13
22	23	2	86	10	148	21	211	19	274	17	337	15
24	25	4	88	2	151	0	213	22	276	20	339	17
26	27	6	90	4	153	2	216	0	278	23	341	20
28	29	9	92	7	155	4	218	2	281	0	343	22
30	31	11	94	9	157	7	220	5	283	3	346	1
32	33	13	96	11	159	9	222	7	285	5	348	3
34	35	16	98	14	161	11	224	9	287	7	350	5
36	37	18	100	16	163	14	226	12	289	10	352	8
38	39	20	102	18	165	16	228	14	291	12	354	10
40	41	23	104	21	166	18	230	16	293	14	356	12
42	44	1	106	23	169	21	232	19	295	17	358	15
44	46	3	109	1	171	23	234	21	297	19	360	17
46	48	6	111	4	174	1	236	23	299	21	362	19
48	50	8	113	6	176	4	239	2	302	0	364	21
50	52	10	115	8	178	6	241	4	304	1	367	0
52	4	13	117	10	180	8	241	6	306	4		
54	56	15	119	13	182	11	245	9	308	7		
56	58	17	121	15	184	13	247	11	310	9		
58	60	20	123	17	186	15	249	13	312	11		
60	61	22	125	20	188	18	251	16	314	14		

M	0	1	2	3	4	5
M	Mon. da	Mon. da.	Mon. da.	Mon. da	Mon. da	Mon. da.
0	Octob. 4	Decem. 6	Febr. 9	April 3	June 15	Aug. 16
1	6	8	11	15	17	18
2	8	10	13	17	19	20
3	10	12	15	19	21	22
4	12	14	17	21	23	24
5	14	16	19	23	25	26
6	16	18	21	25	27	28
7	18	20	23	27	29	30
8	19	22	25	29	July 1	Sept. 1
9	22	24	27	May 1	3	3
10	25	26	Mar. 2	4	5	5
11	27	29	4	6	7	7
12	29	31	6	8	9	9
13	31	Jan. 3	8	10	11	11
14	Nov. 2	5	10	12	13	13
15	4	7	12	14	15	15
16	6	9	14	16	17	17
17	8	11	16	18	19	19
18	10	13	18	20	21	21
19	13	15	20	22	23	23
20	15	17	23	25	25	25
21	17	20	25	27	28	28
22	19	22	27	29	30	30
23	21	24	29	31	Aug. 1	Octob 2
24	23	26	31	June 2	3	4
25	25	28	April 2	4	5	
26	27	30	4	6	7	
27	29	Feb. 1	6	8		
28	Decem 1	3	8	10		
29	3	6	10	12		
30	6	9	12	15		

§ 5.

Examples of Directing a Revolutional Figure both by Tables of Ascension, and by Tables of Houses. &c.

First as in the *Nativity*, you may draw the *Revolution Figure* into a *Speculum*, that thereby you may the better take a view of the Directions; having so done, look under the *Ascendent* and you shall finde the *Ascendent* meets first with the ☌ of ☉ and that falls immediatly after the Revolution, but the next is to the ☌ of ♄ which falls in 26 d of ♏, whose Oblique Ascension under the Poles Elevation 51 deg. 32′ is 260 d. 18′, from which substract the Oblique Ascension of the Ascendent 6 d. of ♏, Viz. 231 d. 37′, there remains 28 d. 41′ for the Arke of Direction; then I turn to the Revolutional Table to degrees and minutes, and against 20 d. I finde 83 d. 22 hours, against 8 d. 33 dayes 13 hours, against 41′ I finde 96 hours 1′ which added together, gives 120 dayes 8 hours which in the little Table of Months points out February 1st. But by the Tables of houses for the same Latitude it may be performed more readily thus; against 26 d. of ♏ in the Collume of the *Ascendent*, I finde time from Noon 11 hours 20′, against 6 d. ♏ in the same Collume of the *Ascendent* I finde time from Noon 9 hours 26′, which substracted from 11 hours 20′ before found, there remains 1 hour 54′ for the Arke of Direction which in the generall Table of time looking out 1 hour at top, and 54′ in the left hand Collume, in the angle of meeting answers 119 dayes 13 hours, which in the particular Table (made from the generall) make search in the same manner, and it points out February the first, as before; so that marke which way you please there will be no considerable differ-

ence

ence (Viz. never above a day, &c. which is of small consequence in this matter.

Again, For the M. C. Directed to the △ of ♌ in 2 d. of ♏. whose R. A. is 154 d. 1′, from which substract R. A. M. C. 141 d. 27′, there remains 12 d 34′ for the Arke of Direction, which sought in the first little Table before, gives 52 dayes 18 hours, Viz 53 dayes which in the Table of Months points out the 26 day of September.

Or by the Table of Houses, seek 19 ♏, under the Collume of the 10th house, because that the M. C. is Directed by R. A. and against 19 d. ♏ I finde time from Noon (or R. A. in time) 9 hours 56′ which substracted from the R. A. of time against 2 d. of ♐ in the same Collume, there remains 56′ of time, which in the particular Table fitted to the Geniture (making search as aforesaid) points out November the 25th, within less then 24 hours of the other way. After this manner you may Direct down all the rest, or fit a Table from the General Table to any Nativity whatsoever, to be used as I have plainly shewed.

These Tables are made by the *Golden Rule*, according to this proportion, If 87 deg. or 5 hours 48′ gives 365 dayes 6 hours, what shall one day give? &c ☉, if 348′ the minutes in 5 hours 48′ give 8766 hours the hours in 365 dayes and a quarter, what shall 1′, 2′, 10′, &c. give?

Note that the Collume entituled *Time from Noon* in the Tables of houses is nothing else but the R. A in time agreeable to the several degrees of the 12 Signes in the Collum of the 10th house, as for Example, the R. A. of 1 d. of ♈ is 55′ which converted into time give 3′ 40″ and so of the rest. Again if you would have the Oblique Ascension for the Latitude of the place, seek the degree desired under

der the Ascendent, and right against it in the Collume of *Time from Noon* you have the Oblique Ascension desired, in time alwayes adding 6 hours to the R. A. found, if under the Pole of the 11th house add 2 hours, if under the Pole of the 12th add 4 hours to the R. A. of time from Noon correspondent and you have the Oblique Ascension in time under those several Elevations, this being known, you may Direct any other Significator by the Tables of houses exact enough for a Revolutional Figure. as also finde the Rising and Setting of the ☉ or any Planet wi hout Latitude, &c.

This foregoing method of Directing the Ascendent and M. C. in a Revolution is the same with that by Tables of Ascension, for here you finde the degrees of the Equator in Time intercepted between the Significator and Promittor which you Convert into degrees, &c. and the thing is the same as before shewed.

CHAPTER. XI.

Of Profections.

Profections (or Progressions are three fold Viz. Annual, Monthly, and Diurnal, but I shall onely touch at Annual Profections, shewing the method of their Directions, because I know some able Artists now living have a good esteem of them, and I leave the other two as superfluous, and scarce worth mentioning, being but a Nicety of the Antients.

§ 1.

What a Profection or Progression is.

ANnual Progression is no more but a Regular change of the Signes successively upon the Cusps of the houses every year, the Planets remaining in the same houses as they were posited in, in the Radix; as if ♌ Ascended at Birth, the next year ♍ should Ascend, the third year ♎, and so on, &c. So that every 12 years the Professional Figure will be the same, as you may perceive by this Table.

A particular Profection Table to the Geniture.

M. C.	Anno Dom	Anno Dom	Anno Dom	Anno Dom	Anno Dom	Anno Dom	Asc.
♈	1641	1653	1665	1677	1689	1701	♌
♉	42	54	66	78	1690	02	♍
♊	43	55	67	79	91	03	♎
♋	44	56	68	1680	92	04	♏
♌	45	57	69	81	93	05	♐
♍	46	58	1670	82	94	06	♑
♎	47	59	71	83	95	07	♒
♏	48	1660	72	84	96	08	♓
♐	49	61	73	85	97	09	♈
♑	1650	62	74	86	98	17 10	♉
♒	51	63	75	87	99	11	♊
♓	52	64	76	88	1700	12	♋

§ 2.

§ 2.

Of the use of Profections.

1 *Mr.* Lilly *affirms that* "Profections do manifest "what years are like to be most prosperous and happy, "and the contrary by the Progression of the principal "Cusps of the Houses, *Viz.* the Ascendent and Mid-"Heaven, for it is generally observed that those yeares "that fall in ✶ or △ to the Horoscope or M C. (espe-"cially when those Houses or Signes were Radically well "fortified, and fortunate) shall prove very prosperous "yeares to the Native, but those that fall in □ or ☍ to "these Angles aforesaid are generally badd years, and "unhappy.

2 *Judge of the effects of Profections, as before of Directions, allwayes considering what the Significator signifies of himself, and what by his Accidental Position, so take notice of the promittor also which plainly declares the cause of the good or evil approaching, &c.*

The Profection of the Ascendent is to be lookt into for the Affection of the Life and Body of the Native, &c. the M. C. for Honour and Preferment, and so order your judgements for the ☉, ☽, *and* ♁'s *Directions to their several Promittors, as hath been before sufficiently expresst, &c.*

3 *The Manner of Profectional Directions is briefly thus,* Viz *to substract the place of the Significator in the Ecliptique, whose Profection you desire from the place of the Promissor, by adding* 30 *deg. if otherwise substraction cannot be made, what remains shall be their distance*

stance, and for every degree allow 12 dayes 4 hours 12' for the Measure of Time, and for every minute 4 hours 52". For if 30 deg. (viz. one Signe) gives 365 dayes, 1 deg. gives 12 dayes 4 hours 12', &c. (or 5 hours) [as in the following Table.]

Or thus, (which by some is look't upon as the truest measure, although the difference is not great, as I have often proved, &c) Substract the Significator from the Promittor, and multiply their difference by 12, and add the Product in Signes and Deg. to the ☉'s place in the Radix, and when the ☉ approacheth to this very point so added, is the true time of the Direction, &c.

A

A Table to convert deg into dayes and hours.

Deg	day	hor.
1	12	4
2	24	9
3	36	13
4	48	17
5	60	21
6	73	1
7	85	5
8	97	10
9	109	14
10	121	18
11	133	22
12	146	2
13	158	7
14	170	11
15	182	15
16	194	19
17	206	23
18	219	3
19	231	8
20	243	12
21	255	16
22	267	20
23	280	0
24	292	5
25	304	9
26	316	13
27	328	17
28	340	21
29	353	2
30	365	6

A Table of Converting Minutes into Dayes and Hours

M	D.	h.	M	D. hor.
1	0	5	31	6 7
2	0	10	32	6 12
3	0	15	33	6 17
4	0	20	34	6 22
5	1	0	35	7 2
6	1	5	36	7 7
7	1	10	37	7 12
8	1	16	38	7 17
9	1	20	39	7 22
10	2	1	40	8 3
11	2	6	41	8 8
12	2	10	42	8 13
13	2	15	43	8 17
14	2	20	44	8 22
15	3	1	45	9 3
16	3	6	46	9 8
17	3	11	47	9 13
18	3	16	48	9 18
19	3	21	49	9 23
20	4	1	50	10 4
21	4	6	51	10 8
22	4	11	52	10 13
23	4	16	53	10 18
24	4	21	54	10 23
25	5	2	55	11 4
26	5	7	56	11 9
27	5	12	57	11 14
28	5	16	58	11 18
29	5	21	59	11 23
30	6	2	60	12 4

A Table fitted to the Proposed Genitures, for the ready finding the day of a Professional Direction.

Prom.	M. C.	Prom.	Ascend.	Prom.	Saturn	Prom.	Moon	Prom.	Mars	Prom.
♄	☌ ♉ 16	⊕	☌ Octob 12	☽	☌ Octob 12	12. 6.	Nov. 16	☉	☌ Octo. 14	
♀	☌ ♐ 28	☉	☌ Octo. 27	12 6	Nov. 23	9. 3	Febr. 9	☽	☌ ♐. 21	
♂	Decem. 3	☽	☌ Octob 29	9. 3	Febr. 16	☊ ☋	Feb. 24	12. 6	Decem 3	
12. 6.	Decem. 3	12. 6.	Decem 11	☊ ☋	March 2	♅	Feb. 26	9. 3.	Feb. 26	
♅	Decem. 9	9. 3	January 9	♅	March 3	M. C.	March 12	☊ ☋	March 10	
11. 5.	March 25	☊ ☋	March 21	M. C.	March 20	♄	April 3	♅	March 15	
Asc 7.	April 3	♅	March 23	♄	April 11	♀	April 5	M. C.	March 29	
⊕	April 11	MC	April 6	♀	April 13	♂	May 11	♄	April 20	
☉	April 20	♄	April 28	♂	May 19	2. 8.	May 11	♀	April 22	
☽	April 28	♀	April 30	2. 8	May 19	☿	May 19	♂	May 28	
12. 6.	June 10	♂	June 5	♀	May 26	11. 5.	May 23	2. 8	May 28	
9. 3	Septem 2	2. 8.	June 5	2. 8.	Sept. 8	Asc. 7.	Septem 9	♀	June 3	
☊ ☋	Sept. 19	☿	June 13	Asc. 7	Sept. 17	⊕	Sep. 17	11. 5	Sept 17	
♅	Sept. 20	11. 5	Septem 27	⊕	Sept 25	☉	Sep. 27	Asc. 7	Sep. 26	

The use of these Tables in directing the Hyleg iacal points in a Profectional Figure, &c.

1 IN the proposed Geniture, *Suppose the profectional Figure for the year 1668 were to be directed, it takes its beginning from* October *1667. &c. against 1667 in the last Table, viz. In the 4 h Collume I finde* ☌ *under M C. in the first, and* ♎ *under the Ascendent in the last Collume, which you are to set upon the Ascendent and M. C. and all the Cusps of the other houses correspondent in the Profectional Figure, placing the same degrees and minutes, and all the Planets posited in the same houses as they were in in the Nativity. so you have the Profectional Figure for the year desired, &c.*

2 *You may Direct the Ascendent, M. C.* ☉. ☽ *and* ⊕. *(with much ease) by the help of the prepared Table, after this manner.*

Example,

How to Direct the Ascendent of the Profectional Figure for the year 1668 *aforesaid, which is Divolved to* ♎ 19 deg. 28 ′.

1 I enter the speculum of the Nativity, pag 184. and against 19 d. in the first Collume under ♎ I begin and sail down, where I finde the *Ascendent* meets with the ☌ of ☉, then with the △ of the ☽ (the antiscions of the Planets I here reject) then in the Collume under ♑ I finde the ☊, and □ of ♅, then the 4 th house, and so on. &c.

2 To know when these Directions happened, and any other under the Ascendent, I enter this last fitted Table and look into the Collumes belonging to the Ascendent, where against the ☉ I finde *Octob* 21, and against ☽ *Octob.* 29, against ☊ *March* 21, against ♅ *March* 23 &c.

And thus I have the true time when the aforesaid Directions happened according to the Table of the usual measure of time in Profections before inserted.

3 The M. C. in the Profectional Figure is divolved to ♎, *viz.* 4 deg. 36′, with which I enter the Speculum of the Radix, and proceed as before, &c.

So I finde the *M. C.* first meets with the △ of ♄, which I search in the fitted Table in the Collumes belonging to *M. C.* against ♄ I finde *October* 26, the time of the Direction next to the Speculum, the *M. C.* meets with the ✶ of ☿, which points out (according to the aforesaid method) *October* 28, then to the □ of ♂ *December* 3. and to the □ of ♀ *December* 9, &c.

3 In this Profectional Figure you will finde the ☉ divolved to ♐, and the ☽ to ♈, and ⊕ to ♒, (*viz.* the Radical place of the ☽) and you will finde the ☉ comes to the ✶ of the ☽ *Octobes* the 12th, and to the ✶ of ♄ *April the* 11th, 1668, and to the △ of ♀ *April* 13. &c.

The ☽ comes to the ☍ and □ of ♅ *February* the 24th and 26th, and to the M. C. *March* 12, to the ✶ of ♄ and △ of ♀ *April* 3, and 5. &c.

So the ⊕ to the ☌ of the ☽ *October* 21, to the ☌ of ☿ and ☍ of ♀ *April* 20, and 22, *viz.* 1668. And thus having fitted such a particular Table to any Nativity, the business of Profectional Directions becomes extream easie and ready, and this is the true and genuine way of this kind of Directions, as they have been much experienced to be notable significators.

§ 4.

How to make such a Table to any Geniture whatsoever.

1 *Draw the Nativity into a Speculum, and then begin at top and take out the degrees and minutes of all the Planets, Cusps of the houses,* ☊ *and* ☋, ⊕, *&c. and put them down as, in the Margent I have taken them out of the Speculum.* pag 184

		d.	′
Dom.	♑	3.	0
	☊ ☋	3	18
	♑	8	18
M. C.	♎	4	36
	♄	6	22
	♀	6	32
	♂	9	30
	♃	10	9
Dom.	♋	11. 18	42
Ascen.	♌	19	28
	⊕	20	6
	☉	20	53
	☽	21	31
Dom.	♐	12. 6. 25	1

In the next place begin to substract them, as suppose the Ascendent 19 *d.* 28′ *from the next greater* 20 *d.* 6′ *there remains* 38′ *so* 19 *d.* 28′ *from* 20 *d.* 53′ *there remains* 1 *d.* 25′ *and so on till you come to the Ascendent again, adding* 30 *d. where substraction cannot be made, do the like for the* M. C. ☉, ☽, ⊕.

2 *Convert these degrees and minutes into time by the foregoing Table. and put the Months and Dayes, as also the Character of the Planet from whose place they were taken, into a Table according to the precedent Example after this manner. Viz Substract the deg. and min. of the Ascendent,* 19 *d.* 28′ *from the deg. and min. of* ♌ 3 *d.* 26′ *adding* 30 *d. viz.* 33 *d.* 26′. *there remains* 13 *d.* 58′ *This* 13 *d. (by the Table of converting Deg into Time in profections) gives* 158 *dayes,* 7 *hours, and* 58′ *gives* 11 *dayes* 18 *hours. which added, makes* 170 *dayes* 1 *hour, then in the Table of Months, and dayes of the year from the Birth, I seek* 170 *dayes, and against March* 31, *I finde* 178; *therefore*

substract this overplus of 8 dayes from 31, rests March the 23, which I place against ♈ under the Ascendent as you may see in the prepared Table, Et sic de cæteris. and so you have a Table fitted for Profectional Directions, which by help of the Radical Speculum performes the work by Inspection, which will countervail a little pains in making the Table, and save much labour every year to work out the Directions the vulgar way.

§ 5.

How to judge of Profectional Figures.

Consider the Signe of the Ascendent and M. C. and look whether they were the places of fortunate Planets, or good houses in the Radix, as also what Planets are essentially dignified therein, or what Planets beheld those degrees with any amicable aspect in the Radix, if you finde the Signes of the Profectional, as also the Radical Figures no way vitiated and their Lords well dignified, &c. It argues the year shall prove successful and very fortunate, and this the rather, if the Revolutional Figure concur, for then you may conclude the Native shall proceed in his affairs with content and enjoy health of body, increase of estate, and in fine go on with much chearfulness and delight in all his actions in general, and thus if you consider what hath been said before of Nativities you cannot fail to judge of any Figure thereon depending.

CHAP.

CHAPTER XII.

Of Tranſits.

THE Tranſit of a Planet is no more but his paſſing by the place or Aſpect of any other Planet, or by the Cuſps of the houſes, &c. in any Nativity, which is eaſily diſcovered by an Ephemeris, thus, Suppoſe any perſon hath ♄ in 20 d. of ♋, in their Nativity, now in the Ephemeris when I finde ♄ in 20 d. ♍ he then tranſits his oppoſite place, and if at the ſame time I finde ♂ in 20 d. of ♈ or ♎, he is ſaid to tranſit the Radical place of ♄ by a Quartil Aſpect. &c.

2 When ☿ or ♀ both paſs by, or tranſit, their own places or the Radical places of the ☉ or ☽, or if they are in any benevolent Aſpect of their places at Birth, this is an argument of good to the Native. But if they behold the Luminaries or their own places by □ or ☍, this ſignifies ill to the Native; neither doth the good Aſpect of ☿ and ♀ always promiſe much good to any perſon, although they are termed Fortunes, except they were fortunate at Birth, and Lords of good houſes, &c. And ſo in ſome Nativities ♄ and ♂ may be greater Fortunes.

3 If ♄ and ♂ were unfortunate in the Radix, and bearing no ſignification of good to the Native there. I ſay if theſe Planets ſhall tranſit the places of the Luminaries, or ☿ or ♀ or the chief Angles of the Figure, or their own Radical places it portends no good to the Na-

tive, but Crosses and vexation, and his busines upon such kind of bad transits, generally goes on very unluckily, and untowardly (as we usually term it.)

4 ♃ and ♀ (unfortunate) and transiting the degree Horoscopial at Birth, declares the Native at that time to be chearful, inclining to mirth, healthful and his busines to go on very successfully, &c.

5 If they pass by the degree of the second house or any good Aspect of the Lord thereof, this is accounted a very fit time to get in moneys, or to lay it out to advantage Accordingly order your judgment, if they transit the cusps of the other Houses, or their Lords, and judg according to their several significations.

Mr. Lilly affirms, if ♂ do transit the degree ascending in any Nativity, he stirs up the Native to choler for two or three years, or gives the occasion whereby he is stirred up to wrath and passion &c. So if ♄ transits the cusp of the Ascendent, the Native is grave and sober, inclinable to melancholy, &c. And for the most part those days are accounted very fortunate and successful, when either the fortunes or the Luminaries behold the degree ascending with any benevolent aspect, or the cusp of the tenth, or their own Radical places: But those days are generally found to be unfortunate, when the Infortunes ♄ or ♂ transit the aforesaid places, or the places of the Luminaries, or of ♃ & ♀. Judg the same if they happen to be in any bad aspect of the Radical places of the aforesaid Significators, &c.

Thus much may serve to be spoken of Transits, with which I shall here conclude this Subject of

The GENETHLIACAL Part

Of

ASTROLOGIE.

New

New Tables of *Houses* for several Latitudes, calculated (mostly) to the obliquity of the Ecl 23 d. 31′ 21″.

Lat [49 d.] for the Ascend.		Lat. [52 d] for the Ascend.	
♈ 054503	♈ 993214	♈ 060762	♈ 993768
♎ 945597	♎ 006786	♎ 939238	♎ 006232
For the 12 and 2 Houses		*For the 12 and 2 houses*	
♈ 047819	♈ 992480	♈ 052616	♈ 992991
♎ 952181	♎ 007520	♎ 947384	♎ 007009
For the 3 and 11 houses		*For the 3 and 11 houses*	
♈ 032690	♈ 989497	♈ 034754	♈ 990069
♎ 967310	♎ 010503	♎ 965246	♎ 009931
Lat. [50 d.] for the Ascen.		Lat. [52 d. 17′] for the As.	
♈ 056433	♈ 993411	♈ 061232	♈ 993811
♎ 943567	♎ 006589	♎ 938668	♎ 006189
For the 12 and 2 houses		*For the 12 and 2 houses*	
♈ 049322	♈ 992668	♈ 053085	♈ 993089
♎ 950678	♎ 007332	♎ 946915	♎ 006911
For the 3 and 11 houses		*For the 11 and 3 houses*	
♈ 032334	♈ 989685	♈ 034968	♈ 990129
♎ 967666	♎ 010315	♎ 965032	♎ 009871
Lat. [51 d] for the Ascend.		Lat [52 d. 21′] for the As.	
♈ 058512	♈ 993591	♈ 061617	♈ 993830
♎ 941488	♎ 006409	♎ 938383	♎ 006170
For the 2 and 12 houses		*For the 2 and 12 houses*	
♈ 050914	♈ 992855	♈ 052381	♈ 993074
♎ 949086	♎ 007145	♎ 947619	♎ 006926
For the 3 and 11 houses		*For the 3 and 11 houses*	
♈ 034021	♈ 989775	♈ 035014	♈ 990168
♎ 965979	♎ 010225	♎ 964986	♎ 009832

New Tables of *Houses* for several Latitudes, calculated (mostly) to the obliquity of the Ecl 23 d. 31′30″.

Lat. [51 32′ d.] for the Asc.

♈ 059712	} {	♈ 993635
♎ 940288	} {	♎ 006315

For the 12 and 2 Houses

♈ 051821	} {	♈ 992928
♎ 948179	} {	♎ 007072

For the 3 and 11 houses

♈ 034419	} {	♈ 989978
♎ 965581	} {	♎ 010022

Lat [51 d. 46′] for the Asc.

♈ 060220	} {	♈ 993727
♎ 939780	} {	♎ 006273

For the 12 and 2 houses

♈ 052169	} {	♈ 993003
♎ 947831	} {	♎ 006997

For the 3 and 11 houses

♈ 034582	} {	♈ 990024
♎ 965418	} {	♎ 009976

Lat. [53 d] for the Ascend.

♈ 062206	} {	♈ 993945
♎ 937794	} {	♎ 006055

For the 2 and 12 houses

♈ 054472	} {	♈ 993219
♎ 945528	} {	♎ 006771

For the 3 and 11 houses

♈ 035528	} {	♈ 990245
♎ 964471	} {	♎ 009735

Lat. [54 d] for the Ascend.

♈ 065818	} {	♈ 994120
♎ 934182	} {	♎ 005880

For the 12 and 2 houses

♈ 056488	} {	♈ 993406
♎ 943512	} {	♎ 006594

For the 3 and 11 houses

♈ 036346	} {	♈ 990464
♎ 963654	} {	♎ 009536

Lat. [55 d.] for the Ascen.

♈ 068816	} {	♈ 996295
♎ 931184	} {	♎ 003705

For the 12 and 2 houses

♈ 058621	} {	♈ 993599
♎ 941379	} {	♎ 006401

For the 11 and 3 houses

♈ 037227	} {	♈ 990666
♎ 962773	} {	♎ 009334

Lat. [56 d.] for the Ascen.

♈ 072071	} {	♈ 994469
♎ 927919	} {	♎ 005531

For the 2 and 12 houses

♈ 068957	} {	♈ 993783
♎ 931043	} {	♎ 006217

For the 3 and 11 houses

♈ 038115	} {	♈ 990873
♎ 961885	} {	♎ 009127

A Table of Right Ascensions of every Degree of the Ecliptick

♈ ♎		♉ ♍		♊ ♐		♋ ♑		♌ ♒		♍ ♓	
D	d	m	d	m	d	m	d	m		m	d	m
0	0	0	27	54	57	48	90	0	122	12	152	6
1	0	55	28	51	58	51	91	5	123	14	153	4
2	1	50	29	49	59	53	92	11	124	17	154	1
3	2	45	30	46	60	56	93	16	125	19	154	58
4	3	40	31	44	61	59	94	22	126	20	155	54
5	4	35	32	42	63	3	95	27	127	22	156	51
6	5	30	33	40	64	6	96	32	128	24	157	48
7	6	25	34	38	65	9	97	38	129	25	158	44
8	7	21	35	37	66	13	98	43	130	26	159	40
9	8	16	36	36	67	17	99	48	131	27	160	37
10	9	11	37	34	68	21	100	53	132	28	161	33
11	10	6	38	33	69	25	101	58	133	28	162	29
12	11	2	39	33	70	29	103	3	134	29	163	25
13	11	57	40	32	71	34	104	8	135	29	164	20
14	12	53	41	31	72	38	105	13	136	29	165	16
15	3	48	42	31	73	43	106	17	137	29	166	12
16	14	44	43	31	74	47	107	22	138	29	167	3
17	15	40	44	31	75	52	108	26	139	28	168	3
18	16	35	45	31	76	57	109	31	140	27	168	58
19	17	31	46	32	78	2	110	35	141	27	169	54
20	18	27	47	32	79	7	111	39	142	26	170	49
21	19	23	48	33	80	12	112	43	143	24	171	44
22	20	20	49	34	81	17	113	47	144	22	172	39
23	21	16	50	35	82	22	114	51	145	21	173	35
24	22	12	51	36	83	28	115	54	146	20	174	30
25	23	9	52	38	84	33	116	57	147	18	175	25
26	24	6	53	40	85	38	118	1	148	16	176	10
27	25	2	54	41	86	44	119	4	149	14	177	15
28	25	59	55	43	87	49	120	7	150	11	178	10
29	26	56	56	46	88	55	121	9	151	9	179	5
30	27	54	57	48	90	0	122	12	152	6	170	0

Note that in the southern Signs you add 180 degrees.

A Table of Oblique Ascension

	♈		♉		♊		♋		♌		♍	
	d	m	d	m	d	m	d	m	d	m	d	m
0	0	0	13	3	30	10	56	46	94	34	137	15
1	0	25	13	31	30	52	57	52	95	58	138	41
2	0	49	14	0	31	36	58	59	97	21	140	7
3	1	15	14	30	32	19	60	6	98	45	141	33
4	1	39	15	0	33	4	61	14	100	8	142	59
5	2	4	15	29	33	48	62	23	101	33	144	25
6	2	29	16	0	34	34	63	33	102	57	145	51
7	2	54	16	31	35	20	64	43	104	22	147	17
8	3	19	17	2	36	7	65	54	105	46	148	43
9	3	45	17	32	36	55	67	6	107	11	150	8
10	4	10	18	4	37	44	68	19	108	36	151	34
11	4	35	18	35	38	33	69	33	110	2	152	59
12	5	1	19	8	39	23	70	47	111	27	154	25
13	5	26	19	41	40	14	72	1	112	53	155	50
14	5	52	20	13	41	6	73	17	114	18	157	16
15	6	17	20	46	41	59	74	33	115	44	158	41
16	6	43	21	21	42	52	75	50	117	10	160	7
17	7	9	21	56	43	47	77	7	118	36	161	32
18	7	35	22	31	44	42	78	25	120	2	62	58
19	8	1	23	7	45	36	79	43	121	27	164	23
20	8	28	23	42	46	33	81	2	122	54	165	48
21	8	54	24	15	47	31	82	21	124	20	167	13
22	9	22	24	56	48	29	83	41	125	46	168	39
23	9	48	25	53	49	28	85	1	127	12	170	4
24	10	15	26	11	50	28	86	22	128	39	171	30
25	10	43	26	49	51	29	87	42	130	5	172	54
26	11	10	27	28	52	31	89	3	131	31	174	20
27	11	38	28	7	53	34	90	24	132	57	175	45
28	12	6	28	48	54	37	91	47	134	23	177	10
29	12	34	29	29	55	41	92	11	135	50	178	36
30	13	3	30	10	56	46	94	24	137	15	180	0

	♎		♏		♐		♑		♒		♓	
	d	m	d	m	d	m	d	m	d	m	d	m
0	180	0	222	46	265	26	303	14	329	50	346	58
1	181	24	224	11	266	49	304	19	330	32	347	26
2	182	50	225	37	268	11	305	23	331	13	347	54
3	184	15	227	3	269	34	306	26	331	53	348	22
4	185	40	228	29	270	56	307	29	332	32	348	50
5	187	6	229	55	272	18	308	31	333	11	349	17
6	188	30	231	21	273	37	309	32	333	49	349	45
7	189	56	232	47	274	58	310	32	334	27	350	12
8	191	21	234	14	276	19	311	31	335	4	350	38
9	192	47	235	40	277	39	312	29	335	42	351	6
10	194	12	237	6	278	58	313	26	336	18	351	32
11	195	37	238	33	280	17	314	23	336	53	351	59
12	197	2	239	58	281	34	315	18	337	29	352	25
13	198	28	241	24	282	53	316	13	338	4	352	51
14	199	53	242	50	284	10	317	8	338	39	353	17
15	201	19	244	16	285	27	318	1	339	14	353	43
16	202	44	245	42	286	43	318	54	339	47	354	8
17	204	10	247	8	287	58	319	48	340	19	354	34
18	205	35	248	33	289	13	320	37	340	52	354	59
19	207	1	249	58	290	27	321	27	341	24	355	25
20	208	26	251	24	291	41	322	16	341	56	355	50
21	209	52	252	49	292	53	323	5	342	28	356	16
22	211	17	254	14	294	5	323	53	342	59	356	41
23	212	43	255	38	295	16	324	40	343	27	357	7
24	214	9	257	3	296	27	325	26	343	59	357	32
25	215	35	258	27	297	36	326	12	344	31	357	56
26	216	59	259	52	298	46	326	56	345	1	358	22
27	218	27	261	15	299	54	327	41	345	30	358	46
28	219	53	262	39	301	1	328	24	346	0	359	11
29	221	19	264	3	302	8	329	8	346	29	359	34
30	222	46	265	26	303	14	329	50	346	58	360	0

A Table of declin. of Eclips

	♈ ♎		♉ ♏		♊ ♐		
	d	m	d	m	d	m	
	0	0	11	31	20	13	30
1	0	24	11	52	20	26	29
2	0	48	12	13	20	38	28
3	1	12	12	33	20	50	27
4	1	36	12	54	21	1	26
5	2	0	13	14	21	12	25
6	2	23	13	34	21	23	24
7	2	47	13	54	21	33	23
8	3	11	14	14	21	43	22
9	3	35	14	33	21	53	21
10	3	58	14	52	22	2	20
11	4	22	15	11	22	10	19
12	4	46	15	29	22	19	18
13	5	9	15	48	22	26	17
14	5	32	16	6	22	34	19
15	5	56	16	24	22	41	15
16	6	19	16	41	22	47	14
17	6	42	16	58	22	53	13
18	7	5	17	15	22	59	12
19	7	28	17	32	23	4	11
20	7	51	17	48	23	9	10
21	8	13	18	4	23	13	9
22	8	36	18	20	23	17	8
23	8	58	18	35	23	20	7
24	9	21	18	50	23	23	6
25	9	43	19	5	23	26	5
26	10	5	19	19	23	28	4
27	10	26	19	33	23	29	3
28	10	48	19	47	23	31	2
29	11	9	20	00	23	31	1
30	11	31	20	13	23	32	0
	♓	♍	d	m	d	m	
	♌	m	♑	♒	♈	♋	

A Table for equating the declin. of the Planets with latitude.

Lat.	♈ ♎		10	20
0	0		0	0
1	5		5	5
2	10		10	9
3	15		15	14
4	20		20	18
5	25		24	22
6	30		29	27
	20		20	10

Lat.	♉ ♏		10	20
0	0		0	0
1	4		3	2
2	8		6	4
3	12		9	6
4	15		12	8
5	20		15	10
6	24		18	31
	♍		0	10
	♌			

Lat.	♊ ♐		10	20
0	♐		0	0
1	1		1	0
2	3		2	0
3	4		3	1
4	5		3	1
5	7		4	1
6	8		4	1
	♑		20	10
	♒			

Adde,

S	N	0 d	0 m	I d	I m	II d	II m	III d	III m	IV d	IV m	V d	V m	
♑	♈	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	30
		6	0	33	0	36	0	39	0	42	0	45	0	48	24
		12	1	3	1	09	1	15	1	21	1	27	1	31	18
		18	1	31	1	39	1	48	1	57	2	06	2	15	12
		24	1	54	2	5	2	17	2	28	2	40	2	52	6
♒	♉	2	12	2	25	2	39	2	53	3	7	3	22	♊
		6	2	24	2	40	2	56	3	12	3	28	3	45	24
		12	2	29	2	46	3	4	3	22	3	40	3	59	18
		18	2	27	2	46	3	6	3	25	3	45	4	5	12
		24	2	20	2	40	3	1	3	22	3	43	4	4	6
♓	♊	2	6	2	27	2	49	3	11	3	33	3	55	♋
		6	1	48	2	10	2	33	2	55	3	18	3	41	24
		12	1	25	1	48	2	11	2	34	2	58	3	21	18
		18	0	59	1	22	1	46	2	9	2	33	2	57	12
		24	0	30	0	53	1	17	1	41	2	5	2	29	6
♈	♋	0	0	0	23	0	47	1	11	1	35	1	59	♈
		6	0	30	0	6	0	18	0	42	1	06	1	30	24
		12	0	59	0	35	0	12	0	13	0	36	1	00	18
		18	1	25	1	2	0	39	0	16	0	7	0	30	12
		24	1	48	1	25	1	3	0	40	0	18	0	4	6
♉	♌	2	6	1	44	1	23	1	2	0	41	0	20	♍
		6	2	20	1	59	1	39	1	19	0	59	0	39	24
		12	2	27	2	8	1	49	1	30	1	12	0	53	18
		18	2	28	2	11	1	54	1	37	1	19	1	02	12
		24	2	24	2	8	1	53	1	37	1	22	1	7	6
♊	♍	2	12	1	58	1	45	1	31	1	17	1	5	♎
		6	1	54	1	43	1	32	1	21	1	10	0	59	24
		12	1	31	1	22	1	14	1	05	1	57	0	49	18
		18	1	03	0	57	0	51	0	45	0	40	0	34	12
		24	0	33	0	30	0	27	0	24	0	21	0	18	6
		30	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	♑

Adde,

A Table of the most eminent fixed Stars that are used in a Nativity, calculated for the begining of the year 1665.

Names of the Stars	longit	☉g	latit	D	nat	mag
The * in the end of Peg. w.	4 31	♈	12 35	N	♂ ☿	2
Bright * in the whales jaw	9 40	♓	12 37	S	♄	2
Bright * of the Pleiades	25 17	♉	4 ⌀	N	♂ ☽	3
The N eye of Taurus	3 46	♊	2 36	S	♀	3
The ☌ eye of Aldebaron	5 5	♊	5 31	S	♂	1
Pollux Hercules	18 36	♋	6 38	N	♂	2
Lyons heart, Cor ♌ *	25 14	♌	0 26	N	♂ ♃	1
Lyons back	6 34	♍	14 20	N	♄ ♀	2
Lyons tayl	16 56	♍	12 18	N	♄ ♀ ☿	1
The * under the virg. gird.	6 48	♎	8 41	N	☿ ♀	3
Virgins Spike *	19 9	♎	1 59	S	♂ ♀	1
South Ballance	10 24	♏	0 26	N	♄ ♀	2
North Ballance	14 41	♏	8 35	N	♃ ♂	2
Left knee of Ophucus	4 33	♐	11 30	N	♂ ♃	3
Right knee of Ophucus	13 19	♐	7 18	N	♄ ♀	3
Scorpions heart *	5 6	♐	4 27	S	♂ ♃ ☿	1
Higheſt * in forhead of ♏	28 29	♏	1 5	S	♄ ☿	2
Left ſhoulder of ♐	2 45	♑	3 31	S	♃ ♂	3
Deneb or back of ♑	17 12	♒	2 29	S	♄ ♃	3
The * in the left hand of ♒	7 9	♒	8 10	N	♄ ☿	3
The * in left ſhoulder ♒	18 49	♒	8 42	N	♄ ☿	3
Foremoſt in R. hand of ♒	4 23	♓	8 52	N	♄ ☿	3

For every year after 1665, add 50″, and for every year before, ſubſtract 50 or 52″, and you have the Stars true Longitude for years paſt or to come.

A Catalogue of some of the most eminent Cities and Towns in *England* and *Ireland*, with the height of the Pole and difference of meridian from *London*, Ex *Harmon. Cœlest.*

Cities names	D	M	Pol.el		Cities names	D	M	Pol.el	
S. Albans	1	S	51	51	Lincoln	1	S	53	15
Barwick	6	S	55	49	Man the midst	17	S	4	22
Bedford	2	S	52	18	Nottingham	4	S	53	3
Briſtol	11	S	51	32	Newark	3	S	53	2
Boſton	0	O	53	2	Newcaſtle	6	S	54	58
Cambridg	2	A	57	17	N. Luffiogham	3	S	52	41
Canterbury	5	A	51	17	Norwich	4	A	52	44
Carliſle	10	S	54	57	Northampton	4	S	52	18
Cheſter	11	S	53	20	Oxford	5	S	51	46
Coventry	4	S	52	30	Okenham	3	S	52	44
Carmarthen	17	S	52	2	Peterborough	2	S	52	35
Chicheſter	3	S	50	56	Richmond	6	S	54	26
Colcheſter	5	A	52	4	Rocheſter	3	A	51	28
Darby	5	S	53	6	S. Mich. mount	23	S	50	38
Dublin	26	S	53	11	Stafford	8	S	52	55
Durham	5	S	54	45	Stampford	2	S	52	41
Dartmouth	15	S	50	32	Shrewsbury	11	S	52	48
Ely	1	A	52	20	Tredagh *Irel.*	7	S	53	38
Grantham	2	S	52	58	Uppingham	3	S	52	40
Gloceſter	9	S	52	0	Warwick	6	S	52	25
Halifax	6	S	53	49	Wincheſter	5	S	51	10
Hartford	1	S	51	50	Waterford *Irel*	7	S	52	22
Hereford	11	S	52	14	Worceſter	9	S	52	20
Huntington	1	S	52	19	Yarmouth	6	S	52	45
Hull	1	S	53	50	York	4	S	54	0
Lancaſter	11	S	54	8	London	0	O	51	32
Leiceſter	4	S	52	40					

The use of these Tables are briefly thus:

I. THe new Tables of Houses are made as you are directed pag 72 &c. Sect. 3 Chap. 4. hereof, where you are also instructed how to use them, (with the semi-oblique Ascension of each House) unto which Section I refer you. Note, that you use a Canon with these Tables of Houses, not exceeding their Radius 1000000.

II. The Table of right and oblique Ascensions are to be used after this manner, viz. with the Sign on the head and Degree on the left hand Column, the common angle of meeting gives you the right or oblique Ascension desired, onely note, if your right Ascension sought be in ♎ ♏ ♐ ♑ ♒ or ♓, you are to add 180 d to the R. A. found, as you are directed at the bottom of the Table: always making proportion for the odd minutes, if there be any adhering to the degrees given.

III. The next Tables inform you how to find the Declination or R. A. either with or without Latitude: thus for the Declination of a star, if you find the proposed Sign at the head, then the degrees answering thereunto, are found in the first left hand collumn, but if the proposed Sign be at the bottom of the Table, the degrees are in the last small column on the right hand, and the common angle of meeting gives you the Ecliptick Declination desired, making proportion for odd minutes &c.

IV. To find the Declination of a star with Latitude. First seek the Ecliptick Declination aforesaid, then seek the Latitude in the left side of the little Table of Equation and the Sign and Degree at head, and in the angle of meeting

ing you have certain minutes to be subſtracted from the given Latitude, and the remainer is the Latitude correct; then when the latitude and longitude are of one kind, viz. North Signs and North latitude, or South Signs and South latitude, add this corrected latitude to the Ecliptick Declination, and the ſum is the Declination with with latitude; but if the longitude be contrary, viz. Southern Signs and Northern latitude, ſubſtract the ſame.

Example, Let a Plane: be in ♈ 20 *d.* with 4 *d.* North latitude, the ecliptical declination of 20 *d.* of ♈ is found by the Table 7 *d.* 51′, then I enter the little Table of Equation with 4 *d* latitude in the left ſide, and right under 20 *d.* ♈, I find 18′ which ſubſtracted from 4 *d* 0 lat. leaves 3 *d* 42′ the lat. correct, which added to the ecliptick Declination 7 *d.* 51′, the ſum is 11 *d.* 33′ the declination required; but had the longit. been in the ſame *deg.* of ♎ a Southern ſign, with the ſame North latitude, I muſt have ſubſtracted his correct lat. from the eclip ick longitude aforeſaid, and the Remainder would be 4 *d.* 9′ the declin. ſought.

Take another Example for practice; Let a ſtar or plaet be in ♉ 20 *d.* 30′ lat. 3 *d.* 30′ North, the declin. in the ecliptick is 17 *d* 56′, then in the other Table of Equation, gainſt 20 *d* ♉ at head, and at 3 *d.* 30′ in the ſide, is 7′ correſpondent, which ſubſtract from the lat. 3 *d.* 30′ and the remainer 3 *d.* 23′ is the lat. which added to the ecliptick declination, the ſum is 21 *d.* 19′ the declination ſought. But if the ſtar were in 20 *d.* 30′ ♍ with the like N latit. ſubſtract the correct lat. and the remainer is 14 *d.* 33′ the declination of that point.

3. To find the R A of a Planet with latitude by the Table for that purpoſe; Seek the ecliptick diſtance in the ſide, and the latitude at head, and at the angle you have degrees and minutes to be added or ſubſtracted from the ecliptick longitude, thereby to find the Right Aſcenſion with latitude. As for example: Suppoſe I would have the R. A. of 1. of ♒ with 5 *d.* South lat. (1) By a Table before th

Logist. Logar. p. 21. I find the beginning of ♒ is 300 *deg* from the first point of ♈ unto which add this 6 *d.* and 306 *d.* is the ecliptick distance. (2) I enter the Table, *viz.* the first column, and against 6 *d.* ♒ right under 5 *d* latit. at head I find 3 *d.* 45′ to be added (because 'tis above the bl. Line) to the eclip. dist. 306 *d.* their sum is 309 *d.* 45′ the *R. A* desired. *The same method must be used for the* R A *of* 6 *d.* ♌ *with* 5 *d* N. *lat. as* S *and* N *over the Signs do intimate. Again for the* R A *of* 12 *d* ♉ *with* 3 *d south lat. the eclip. dist. from* ♈ *is* 42 *d, and the equation* 1 *d* 30′ *substract (because 'tis below the black line) and there remains* 40 *d.* 30′ *the R. A. The same work is to be performed for the R. A of* 12 *d.* ♏ *with* 3 *d.* N. *lat. for* S *signifying South stands over* ♉, *and* N *for North over* ♏. *Thus the use of the Table is exceeding easie.*

But take another example or two for practise. I would have the *R. A.* of 18 ♒ with 5 *d.* N. lat. the eclip dist is 318 *d.* to which add 53′ the equa. found against the right side of the Table, and 318 *d.* 53′ is the *R. A.* desired,

After the same manner you are to work for the R. A. of any degree of ♑ *and* ♓ *with* N *lat. or* ♋ ♌ ♍ *with South lat. but substract the equation in* ♈ ♉ ♊ *for* N. *lat. because they fall above the black line from the tropick* ♑ *on the right side of the Table, and* N *stands right under them at bottom. And so likewise substract the equation against* ♎ ♏ *and* ♐ *as you find them on the right hand of the Table above the black scale, and noted at bottom* (S) *if the lat. be south; where odd minutes are adhering to long. and lat. make proportion which is of vulgar practise.*

Example. Suppose I would find the *R. A.* of 20 *d.* ♉, 3 *d.* 30′ south lat. Seek 20 *d.* ♉ on the first left hand column and 3 *d.* 30′ at head, and the equation (making proportion) is 1 *d* 29′ which substracted from the ecliptick distance 50 *d.* leaves 48 *d.* 31′ the *R A*, desired. Note, that by the foregoing method you may find the *R. A.* without lat. also, taking out the equation under the column O, &c.

The next Table is of fixed stars, and needs no further ex-

planation than the titles of the ſeveral Columns. In the firſt column the names of ſtars, the ſecond their longitude in d. and m. the third the Sign they are in, the fourth the latitude, the fifth the denomination thereof Nor. or South, the ſixt their natures, and the laſt their Magnitudes.

The laſt Table is a Catalog of places, as the title expreſſes, with their ſeveral latitudes and difference of Meridians, from London, A ſignifies it lies Eaſt, and S denotes it lies Weſt from London, and how to reduce theſe ſeveral Meridians to the Meridian of London, & contra, is ſhewn Chapter ſecond hereof, p. 15, 16, and 17.

Briefe Rules how to compute the ſtars or Planets ſouthing, Riſing and Setting in any Latitude.

I. For their Southing] *To the eſtimate time of the Planets Southing (which you may nearly find by a Table of Houſes) compute his true long. and lat. then by the Rules before given, (either by Trigonometry or by Tables) find the R A of that point, ſo alſo the ☉s R A for the ſame time, laſtly ſubſtract the ☉s R A from the R A of the Planet or ſtar, (by adding the circle where there is occaſion) and the remainer converted into time is the time of the planets ſouthing; if the remainer is under 12 hours the time is after noon, if more than 12, ſubſtract 12 from thence, and the remainer is the time after midnight or in the morning, (or inſtead of ſubſtracting the ☉s R. A. add the complement thereof to 360 d. to the R A of the ſtar, and the ſum converted into time is the true time of ſouthing aforeſaid.*

II. For their Riſing] (1) *To the eſtimate time of the planets riſing, get his Oblique Aſcenſion (as is taught before in this Book) and alſo the ☉s R A for the ſame time.* (2) *From the Ob. Aſc. of the ſtar or planet increaſed by a circle (if need require) ſubſtract the ☉s R A. Laſtly, if the remainer exceed 90 d. ſubſtract 90 d from it, if it be leſs than 90 d. add thereunto 270 d. this ſum or remainer thus made converted into time, is the true Aſtronomical time of the planets or ſtars riſing required.*

III. [To find the time of a Planets setting] *Having the estimate time, and the true longitude and latitude of the planet for that time; find the Oblique Ascension of the opposite point, with opposite latitude, (always under the latitude of your place) and having the ☉'s Right Ascension for that time also, proceed in all respects as you did in computing his Rising, &c.*

Note that by reason of parallax and refraction, the ☽ always appears to our sight to rise later and set sooner than really she doth, and contrarily, all the planets and stars do seem to rise sooner and set later, by the quantity of 2′ of an hour.

To conclude, let the young Artist take notice, that having the fixed stars longitude truly rectified for the year, he may proceed to find their Risings, Southings and Settings, as is before shewed in the Planets; for here is no need of the estimate time first known in them, by reason their annual progression in longitude is inconsiderable, (*viz*) about 50 or 52 *Seconds*;) but in the ☽ and rest of the planets the estimate time is absolutely necessary, because of their swift diurnal motion (most of them) that thereby their true places may be found to that time, and consequently their Ascensions and Descensions, &c.

Examples are needless here, because this is already exemplified in effect, in the Examples of Directions before at large in the Book.

FINIS.

The Reader is hereby informed, That that Excellent Oculist and well known Chirurgical Operator, Doctor *John Save*, (whose Nativity is celebrated in the foregoing Book) is lately removed from the *Strand*, and is now resident at Mr. *Bevers* house in *Gravel-Alley* in *Baldwins garden*, neer the *Old Hole in the Wall*.

The Contents of the I. Part.

Chap. 1. *Of the 12 Signs and their manifold division* pag 3
Of the Aspects of the Planets 6
Of the description and signification of the 12 Signs 8
Chap 2. *Of the names and characters of the planets* 18
Of the antiscions and contrantiscions of the planets 19
A table of their Joys and Houses 20
A table of their orbs and mean motion 22
Of their nature and description 23
Of their essential dignities, their fortitudes and debilities, with a table thereof and its use 29
A table of the members of mans body governed by the planets throughout the 12 Signs 34
A table of the accidental fortitudes and debilities of the planets, with the quarters of heaven the signs signify 35
A table of the fortitudes and debilities of ⊕ 36
A table of the quarters of heaven signified by the houses, as also of the friends, enemies and colours of the planets 37
The general signification of the planets 38
Chap. 3, *The terms of Art explained* 39
How to add and substract Astronomical fractions 43
How to take the part of Fortune 44
Chap 4. *The use of an Ephemeris, and how to set a figure by the tables of Houses, &c.* 47
Chap. 5. *Of the 12 Houses of heaven, and their Astrological signification* 54
Why the houses are divided into 12 and no more 57
Why the 12 houses should have such significations 59
Chap 6. *Of the signification of the Querent and Quesited &c.* 62
By what means things are brought to perfection 67
To know if the figure be radical ibid.
Of the marks, moles and scars of querent or quesited 69

Of

Of varying the Houses in your judgment &c. 70
Of the time of receiving a horary Question 71
Choice Aphorisms to be considered in judging questions 72
Chap. 7. Of the Resolution of all Questions depending upon the 12 Houses 76
Chap. 8. Questions and Judgment proper to the II H. 80
Chap. 9 Questions and Judgment of the III House 82
Chap. 10. Questions and judgment of the IV House 85
Chap. 11. Questions and judgment of the V House 88
Chap. 12. Questions and judgment on the VI House 90
Chap. 13. Questions and judgment on the VII house 93
Chap. 14. Questions and judgment on the VIII house 101
Chap. 15. Questions and judgment on the IX house 103
Chap. 16 Questions and judgment on the X house 105
Chap. 17. Questions and judgment on the XI house 107
Chap. 18. Questions and judgment on the XII house 108
Chap. 19. Examples how to judg all the aforesaid Questions 110 Examples upon the I house to p. 115 Of the II H. to p. 118 Of the III. 119, Of the IV. p 120 Of the V. 123 Of the VI. 125 Of the VII. 126 Of the VIII. 131 Of the IX. 133 Of the X. 134 Of the XI. 135 Of the XII 136
Chap. 20. Of the planetary hour, 138 With a table thereof, and its use and signification, to page 147
Of Elections, to page 151
A table of countries and cities under the 12 Signs 153
Which is followed by Schemes ready set ———

The Contents of the Second Part.

How to rectifie a Nativity several ways. page 1
Example how to rectifie a Nativity by an accident 4
How to rectifie a Nativity by the ☉ or ☽ 10
How to rectifie a Nativity by the trutine of Hermes, with an easie table for that purpose, and its use 11
Chap. 2. How to reduce an Ephemerides 15
Of the Equation of time, and a table thereof 18, 19

F149291